



The Parse Tree of Knowledge



# Formal Languages and Their Applications

An Introduction via Ply

— 2025 —

Prof. Dr. Karl Stroetmann

December 2, 2025

These lecture notes, along with their  $\text{\LaTeX}$  source files and any associated programs, are available on the following GitHub repository:

<https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages>.

Given the ever-changing nature of the field of computer science, these notes are subject to periodic updates. If you have `git` installed on your computer, you can clone the repository using the following command:

```
git clone https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages.git.
```

To update to the most recent version of these notes, execute the command

```
git pull
```

from the repository's root directory.

Since these notes are frequently updated, they may contain typos or errors. If you find any, please consider submitting a pull request or contacting me via [Discord](#) or email at [karl.stroetmann@dhw-mannheim.de](mailto:karl.stroetmann@dhw-mannheim.de).

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction and Motivation</b>	<b>4</b>
1.1	Basic Definitions . . . . .	5
1.2	Overview . . . . .	9
1.3	Literature . . . . .	9
1.4	Check your Understanding . . . . .	10
<b>2</b>	<b>Regular Expressions</b>	<b>11</b>
2.1	Preliminary Definitions . . . . .	12
2.2	The Formal Definition of Regular Expressions . . . . .	13
2.3	Algebraic Simplification of Regular Expressions . . . . .	16
2.4	Check your Understanding . . . . .	18
<b>3</b>	<b>Building Scanners with <i>Ply</i></b>	<b>19</b>
3.1	The Structure of a Ply Scanner Specification . . . . .	21
3.2	The Syntax of Regular Expressions in <i>Python</i> . . . . .	24
3.3	A Complex Example: Evaluating an Exam . . . . .	24
3.4	Scanner States . . . . .	25
3.5	Check your Understanding . . . . .	29
<b>4</b>	<b>Finite Automatons</b>	<b>30</b>
4.1	Deterministic Finite Automatons . . . . .	31
4.2	Non-Deterministic Finite Automatons . . . . .	36
4.3	Transforming NFAs to DFAs . . . . .	39
4.3.1	Implementation . . . . .	43
4.4	From Regular Expression to NFAs . . . . .	43
4.4.1	Implementation . . . . .	47
4.5	Translating a DFA into a Regular Expression . . . . .	47
4.5.1	Implementation . . . . .	51
4.6	Minimization of Finite State Automatons . . . . .	51
4.6.1	Implementation . . . . .	55
4.7	Conclusion . . . . .	55
4.8	Check your Understanding . . . . .	56
<b>5</b>	<b>The Theory of Regular Languages</b>	<b>57</b>
5.1	Closure Properties of Regular Languages . . . . .	58
5.2	Recognizing Empty Languages . . . . .	61
5.3	Equivalence of Regular Expressions . . . . .	62

5.4 Limits of Regular Languages . . . . .	63
5.5 Check your Understanding . . . . .	69
<b>6 Context-Free Languages</b>	<b>70</b>
6.1 Context-Free Grammars . . . . .	71
6.1.1 Derivations . . . . .	75
6.1.2 Parse Trees . . . . .	76
6.1.3 Ambiguous Grammars . . . . .	77
6.2 Top-Down Parser . . . . .	79
6.2.1 Implementing a Recursive Descent Parser that Uses an EBNF Grammar . . . . .	80
6.3 Check your Understanding . . . . .	82
<b>7 Using Ply as a Parser Generator</b>	<b>83</b>
7.1 A Symbolic Calculator . . . . .	84
7.2 Symbolic Differentiation . . . . .	89
7.3 Implementing a Simple Interpreter . . . . .	89
7.4 Check your Understanding . . . . .	103
<b>8 Earley Parser</b>	<b>104</b>
8.1 The Earley Algorithm . . . . .	105
8.2 Implementing Earley's Algorithm in <i>Python</i> . . . . .	110
8.3 Check Your Understandig . . . . .	111
<b>9 Bottom-up Parsers</b>	<b>112</b>
9.1 Bottom-Up-Parser . . . . .	113
9.2 Shift-Reduce-Parser . . . . .	114
9.3 SLR-Parser . . . . .	123
9.3.1 The Functions <i>First</i> and <i>Follow</i> . . . . .	126
9.3.2 Computing the Function <i>action</i> . . . . .	130
9.3.3 Shift/Reduce and Reduce/Reduce Conflicts . . . . .	134
9.4 Canonical LR Parsers . . . . .	137
9.5 LALR-Parser* . . . . .	141
9.6 Comparison of SLR, LR, and LALR Parsers . . . . .	144
9.6.1 SLR Language $\subseteq$ LALR Language . . . . .	144
9.6.2 LALR Language $\subseteq$ Canonical LR Language . . . . .	145
9.6.3 Evaluation of the Different Methods . . . . .	147
9.7 Check your Understanding . . . . .	147
<b>10 Advanced Features of Ply</b>	<b>148</b>
10.1 Shift-Reduce and Reduce-Reduce Conflicts . . . . .	148
10.2 Operator Precedence Declarations . . . . .	150
10.3 Resolving Shift-Reduce and Reduce-Reduce Conflicts . . . . .	154
10.3.1 Look-Ahead Conflicts . . . . .	154
10.3.2 Mysterious Reduce-Reduce Conflicts . . . . .	156

<b>11 Assembler</b>	<b>158</b>
11.1 Introduction into Jasmin Assembler . . . . .	159
11.2 Assembler Instructions . . . . .	162
11.2.1 Instructions to Manipulate the Stack . . . . .	165
11.3 An Example Program . . . . .	170
11.4 Disassembler* . . . . .	173
 <b>12 Development of a Simple Compiler</b>	 <b>177</b>
12.1 The Programming Language <i>Integer-C</i> . . . . .	178
12.2 Developing the Scanner and the Parser . . . . .	180
12.3 Code Generation . . . . .	191
12.3.1 Translation of Arithmetic Expressions . . . . .	191
12.3.2 Translation of Boolean Expressions . . . . .	194
12.3.3 Translation of Statements . . . . .	199
12.3.4 Translation of a Function Definition . . . . .	204
12.3.5 Compiling a Program . . . . .	207

# Chapter 1

## Introduction and Motivation



Figure 1.1: An ancient scroll of cuneiform.

This lecture explores the theory of formal languages and delves into various applications, with a focus on the development of scanners, parsers, interpreters, and compilers. We also introduce a tool designed to aid in the creation of these components, specifically we will introduce [Ply](#), which can be used both as a scanner generator and as a parser generator.

## 1.1 Basic Definitions

The cornerstone of this lecture is the concept of a *formal language*, essentially defined as a set of strings characterized by precise mathematical criteria. To establish this concept, we first introduce some foundational definitions.

**Definition 1 (Alphabet)** An *alphabet*  $\Sigma$  is a finite, non-empty set of *characters*:

$$\Sigma = \{c_1, \dots, c_n\}.$$

The term *symbol* is occasionally used interchangeably with the term *character*.  $\diamond$

**Examples:**

- (a)  $\Sigma = \{0, 1\}$  is the alphabet for representing binary numbers.
- (b)  $\Sigma = \{\text{"a"}, \dots, \text{"z"}, \text{"A"}, \dots, \text{"Z"}\}$  is the standard alphabet for the English language.
- (c)  $\Sigma_{\text{ASCII}} = \{0, 1, \dots, 127\}$  is known as the *ASCII-alphabet*. Here, numbers correspond to letters, digits, punctuation marks, and control characters. For instance, the set of number  $\{65, \dots, 90\}$  represents the letters  $\{\text{A}, \dots, \text{Z}\}$ : The number 65 represents the letter "A", the number 66 represents the letter "B", and the number 90 represents the letter "Z". Table 1.1 on the next page shows the complete ASCII-alphabet. Note that the first 32 codes are non-printable control codes, for example the number 10 encodes a line feed control symbol, while the number 13 encodes a carriage return control symbol.
- (d)  $\Sigma_{\text{UNICODE}} = \{0, 1, \dots, 159, 801\}$  represents version 17.0 of the *UNICODE-alphabet*. This extensive set accommodates a wide array of characters, including various scripts, symbols, and even emojis. Table 1.2 shows the Unicode encoding of the 120 most common Chinese characters.  $\diamond$

**Definition 2 (Strings)** For a given alphabet  $\Sigma$ , a *string* is a sequence of characters selected from  $\Sigma$ . In formal language theory, these sequences are written without brackets or separating commas. Thus, for  $c_1, \dots, c_n \in \Sigma$ , we write

$$w = c_1 \cdots c_n \quad \text{instead of} \quad w = [c_1, \dots, c_n].$$

The *empty string* is represented by  $\lambda$ , so  $\lambda = \text{" "}$ . The set of all possible strings formed from the alphabet  $\Sigma$  is denoted as  $\Sigma^*$ . Strings are often enclosed in quotation marks for emphasis.  $\diamond$

Character	Code	Character	Code	Character	Code
!	33	"	34	#	35
\$	36	%	37	&	38
'	39	(	40	)	41
*	42	+	43	,	44
-	45	.	46	/	47
Ø	48	1	49	2	50
3	51	4	52	5	53
6	54	7	55	8	56
9	57	:	58	;	59
<	60	=	61	>	62
?	63	@	64	A	65
B	66	C	67	D	68
E	69	F	70	G	71
H	72	I	73	J	74
K	75	L	76	M	77
N	78	O	79	P	80
Q	81	R	82	S	83
T	84	U	85	V	86
W	87	X	88	Y	89
Z	90	[	91	\	92
]	93	^	94	_	95
'	96	a	97	b	98
c	99	d	100	e	101
f	102	g	103	h	104
i	105	j	106	k	107
l	108	m	109	n	110
o	111	p	112	q	113
r	114	s	115	t	116
u	117	v	118	w	119
x	120	y	121	z	122
{	123		124	}	125
~	126	DEL	127		

Table 1.1: ASCII Encoding Table

**Examples:**(a) Let  $\Sigma = \{0, 1\}$ . If we define $w_1 := "01110"$  and  $w_2 := "11001"$ ,then both  $w_1$  and  $w_2$  are strings over  $\Sigma$ . Hence, we can state: $w_1 \in \Sigma^*$  and  $w_2 \in \Sigma^*$ .(b) Consider  $\Sigma = \{a, \dots, z\}$ . With

Glyph	Unicode	Glyph	Unicode	Glyph	Unicode	Glyph	Unicode
一	U+4E00	二	U+4E8C	三	U+4E09	四	U+56DB
五	U+4E94	六	U+516D	七	U+4E03	八	U+516B
九	U+4E5D	十	U+5341	人	U+4EBA	大	U+5927
天	U+5929	地	U+5730	日	U+65E5	月	U+6708
山	U+5C71	水	U+6C34	火	U+706B	木	U+6728
金	U+91D1	土	U+571F	子	U+5B50	女	U+5973
中	U+4E2D	国	U+56FD	王	U+738B	民	U+6C11
学	U+5B66	文	U+6587	本	U+672C	书	U+4E66
爱	U+7231	家	U+5BB6	友	U+53CB	生	U+751F
父	U+7236	母	U+6BCD	男	U+7537	女	U+5973
花	U+82B1	草	U+8349	狗	U+72D7	猫	U+732B
鸟	U+9E1F	鱼	U+9C7C	风	U+98CE	雨	U+96E8
云	U+4E91	雪	U+96EA	电	U+7535	光	U+5149
车	U+8F66	船	U+8239	米	U+7C73	茶	U+8336
饭	U+996D	面	U+9762	东	U+4E1C	西	U+897F
南	U+5357	北	U+5317	左	U+5DE6	右	U+53F3
高	U+9AD8	矮	U+77EE	长	U+957F	短	U+77ED
快	U+5FEB	慢	U+6162	早	U+65E9	晚	U+665A
你	U+4F60	好	U+597D	谢	U+8C22	是	U+662F
不	U+4E0D	我	U+6211	他	U+4ED6	她	U+5979
它	U+5B83	很	U+5F88	要	U+8981	有	U+6709
吃	U+5403	喝	U+559D	看	U+770B	听	U+542C
走	U+8D70	跑	U+8DD1	跳	U+8DF3	说	U+8BF4
问	U+95EE	答	U+7B54	学	U+5B66	校	U+6821
老	U+8001	师	U+5E08	生	U+751F	书	U+4E66

Table 1.2: UNICODE Encoding of some Chinese Characters

$w := \text{"example"},$

it follows that  $w \in \Sigma^*$ .  $\diamond$

The *length* of a string  $w$  is denoted by  $|w|$  and represents the number of characters in  $w$ . We employ [array notation](#) for character extraction: given a string  $w$  and a natural number  $i \leq |w|$ ,  $w[i]$  specifies the  $i$ -th character in  $w$ . Character counting starts at 0, adhering to conventions in modern programming languages like C, Java, and Python.

Next, we introduce the concept of [concatenation](#) of two strings  $w_1$  and  $w_2$ . Concatenation results in a new string  $w$  formed by appending  $w_2$  to  $w_1$ . It is represented as  $w_1 \cdot w_2$ . In most books the concatenation of  $w_1$  and  $w_2$  is written without the dot as  $w_1 w_2$ .

**Example:** For  $\Sigma = \{0, 1\}$  and  $w_1 = \text{"01"}$  and  $w_2 = \text{"10"}$ , the concatenated strings are:

$w_1 \cdot w_2 = \text{"0110"}$  and  $w_2 \cdot w_1 = \text{"1001"}$ .  $\diamond$

### Definition 3 (Formal Language)

Given an alphabet  $\Sigma$ , a subset  $L \subseteq \Sigma^*$  is called a [formal language](#) if it is *precisely defined*.  $\diamond$

You may wonder what it means for a subset to be *precisely defined*. A subset  $L$  is precisely defined

if for every  $w \in \Sigma^*$  the notion  $w \in L$  is unambiguously defined. For instance, English doesn't qualify as a formal language because it lacks a precise rule set for valid sentences.

The definition of the concept of a formal language is intentionally broad. As we progress through the lecture, we will explore specialized versions, most notably [regular languages](#) and [context-free languages](#). These are particularly relevant in computer science.

### Examples:

1. Assume that  $\Sigma = \{0, 1\}$ . Define

$$L_{\mathbb{N}} = \{1 \cdot w \mid w \in \Sigma^*\} \cup \{0\}$$

Then  $L_{\mathbb{N}}$  is the language consisting of all strings that can be interpreted as natural numbers given in binary notation. The language contains all strings from  $\Sigma^*$  that start with the character 1 as well as the string 0, which only contains the character 0. For example, we have

$$\text{"100"} \in L_{\mathbb{N}}, \quad \text{but} \quad \text{"010"} \notin L_{\mathbb{N}}.$$

Let us define a function

$$\text{value} : L_{\mathbb{N}} \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$$

on the set  $L_{\mathbb{N}}$ . We define  $\text{value}(w)$  by induction on the length of  $w$ . We call  $\text{value}(w)$  the [interpretation](#) of  $w$ . The idea is that  $\text{value}(w)$  computes the number that is represented by the string  $w$ :

- (a)  $\text{value}(0) = 0$ ,  $\text{value}(1) = 1$ ,
- (b)  $|w| > 0 \rightarrow \text{value}(w0) = 2 \cdot \text{value}(w)$ ,
- (c)  $|w| > 0 \rightarrow \text{value}(w1) = 2 \cdot \text{value}(w) + 1$ .

2. Again we have  $\Sigma = \{0, 1\}$ . Define the language  $L_{\mathbb{P}}$  to be the set of all strings from  $L_{\mathbb{N}}$  that are prime numbers:

$$L_{\mathbb{P}} := \{w \in L_{\mathbb{N}} \mid \text{value}(w) \in \mathbb{P}\}$$

Here,  $\mathbb{P}$  denotes the set of [prime numbers](#), which is the set of all natural numbers  $p$  bigger than 1 that have no divisor other than 1 or  $p$ :

$$\mathbb{P} = \{p \in \mathbb{N} \mid \{t \in \mathbb{N} \mid \exists k \in \mathbb{N} : k \cdot t = p\} = \{1, p\}\}.$$

3. Define  $\Sigma_{\text{ASCII}} = \{0, \dots, 127\}$ . Furthermore, define  $L_C$  as the set of all strings of the form

$$\text{char}^* f(\text{char}^* x) \{ \dots \}$$

that are, furthermore, valid C function definitions. Therefore,  $L_C$  contains all those strings that can be interpreted as a C function  $f$  such that  $f$  takes a single argument which is a string and returns a value which is also a string.

4. Define  $\Sigma := \Sigma_{\text{ASCII}} \cup \{\dagger\}$ , where  $\dagger$  is some new symbol that is different from all symbols in  $\Sigma_{\text{ASCII}}$ . The [universal language](#)  $L_u$  is the set of all strings of the form

$$p\dagger x\dagger y$$

such that

- (a)  $p \in L_C$ ,

- (b)  $x, y \in \Sigma_{\text{ASCII}}^*$ ,
- (c) if  $f$  is the function that is defined by  $p$ , then  $f(x)$  yields the result  $y$ . ◊

The above examples illustrate the expansive scope of what can be considered a formal language. While it's straightforward to identify strings in  $L_{\mathbb{N}}$ , this becomes substantially more challenging for languages like  $L_{\mathbb{P}}$  or  $L_C$ . Moreover, since the [halting problem](#) is undecidable, no algorithm can definitively determine membership in the universal language  $L_u$ . Nevertheless,  $L_u$  is [semi-decidable](#): if a string  $w$  belongs to  $L_u$ , we can eventually establish this fact.

## 1.2 Overview

The aim of this lecture is to cover a series of interconnected topics. While this overview will introduce some terms that may not be immediately clear, rest assured that these terms will be elaborated upon as the lecture progresses. The lecture is structured into three main parts:

1. The first part delves into the theory of [regular languages](#). These are those languages that can be described by a [regular expression](#).
  - (a) We begin with an exploration of [regular expressions](#). After formally defining this term, we will discuss its applications in [Python](#).
  - (b) We then demonstrate how the [PLY](#) tool can be utilized to create [scanners](#).
  - (c) Subsequently, we examine the implementation of regular expressions via [finite state machines](#).
  - (d) A discussion on how to verify the [equivalence](#) of regular expressions follows.
  - (e) We conclude this section by discussing the limitations of regular languages, focusing particularly on the [Pumping Lemma](#).
2. The second part is centered on [context-free languages](#), which are instrumental in describing the syntax of programming languages.
  - (a) We first introduce [context-free grammars](#), which are employed to define context-free languages.
  - (b) Next, we talk about using [PLY](#) as a parser generator.
  - (c) Essential theory for understanding the parser generator [PLY](#) is then presented.
  - (d) Lastly, we discuss the limitations of context-free languages.
3. The final part of this lecture covers interpreters and compilers.
  - (a) We implement an interpreter for a toy language.
  - (b) Then we discuss how to implement a compiler that translates another toy language into [Java byte code](#).

## 1.3 Literature

Besides these lecture notes, there are three books I highly recommend:

- (a) *Introduction to Automata Theory, Languages, and Computation* [HMu06] — Often considered the definitive text on formal languages, this book encompasses all the theoretical concepts discussed in this lecture, although we will only touch on a subset of its content.
- (b) *Introduction to the Theory of Computation* [Sip12] — This book provides another accessible introduction to formal languages and extends to the theory of computability, which is beyond the scope of this lecture.
- (c) *Compilers – Principles, Techniques and Tools* [ASUL06] — A standard reference in compiler theory, this book also covers a substantial portion of formal languages.
- (d) The large language models [Gemini](#), [Grok](#), [Claude](#), [Deepseek](#), and [ChatGPT](#) have reached a level of maturity that allows them to serve as a tutor for many concepts discussed in this course.

## 1.4 Check your Understanding

- (a) Define the notion of an [alphabet](#).
- (b) Based on a given alphabet, define the concept of a [string](#).
- (c) Explain the concept of a [formal language](#).

## Chapter 2

# Regular Expressions



Figure 2.1: Stephen Cole Kleene, the father of regular languages.

*Regular expressions* are linguistic constructs designed to specify formal languages simple enough to be recognized by a **finite state machine**. These machines will be introduced in Chapter 4. At the core, regular expressions enable the specification of:

- (a) Alternatives among different options,
- (b) Concatenation of elements, and
- (c) Repetition of elements.

Regular expressions form the backbone of many modern scripting languages. For instance, the initial surge in the popularity of the programming language *Perl* can be largely attributed to its efficient handling of regular expressions. Today, most popular high-level programming languages (e.g. *Python*, *C++*, *Java*, *C#*, *JavaScript*, *PHP*, *Ruby*) support regular expressions. In the programming language *C* regular expressions are available via the *Posix* library.

Moreover, various *UNIX* utilities, including *grep*, *sed*, and *awk*, are based on regular expressions. Consequently, proficiency in regular expressions is indispensable for a budding computer scientist.

In this chapter, we will introduce a definition of regular expressions that is more concise than those typically found in programming languages. This streamlined definition will facilitate our theoretical examination of regular languages in Chapters 4 and 5. The syntax of regular expressions as used in *Python* will be covered in the subsequent chapter.

## 2.1 Preliminary Definitions

Before delving into the syntax and semantics of regular expressions, we need to introduce some preliminary definitions.

**Definition 4 (Product of Languages)** Given an alphabet  $\Sigma$  and formal languages  $L_1, L_2 \subseteq \Sigma^*$ , the **product** of  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  is denoted as  $L_1 \cdot L_2$  and is defined as the set of all concatenations  $w_1 \cdot w_2$  where  $w_1 \in L_1$  and  $w_2 \in L_2$ . Formally,

$$L_1 \cdot L_2 := \{w_1 \cdot w_2 \mid w_1 \in L_1 \wedge w_2 \in L_2\}. \quad \diamond$$

**Example:** Suppose  $\Sigma = \{a, b, c\}$  and  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are given by

$$L_1 = \{ab, bc\} \quad \text{and} \quad L_2 = \{ac, cb\},$$

then  $L_1 \cdot L_2 = \{abac, abcb, bcac, bccb\}$ .  $\diamond$

**Definition 5 (Power of a Language)** Let  $\Sigma$  be an alphabet,  $L \subseteq \Sigma^*$  a formal language, and  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ . The  $n$ -th **power** of  $L$ , denoted as  $L^n$ , is defined inductively as follows:

B.C.:  $n = 0$ :

$$L^0 := \{\lambda\}, \quad \text{where } \lambda \text{ is the empty string.}$$

I.S.:  $n \mapsto n + 1$ :

$$L^{n+1} = L^n \cdot L. \quad \diamond$$

**Example:** For  $\Sigma = \{a, b\}$  and  $L = \{ab, ba\}$ , we find:

- (a)  $L^0 = \{\lambda\}$ ,
- (b)  $L^1 = L$ ,
- (c)  $L^2 = \{abab, abba, baab, baba\}$ .

◊

**Definition 6 (Kleene Closure)** Given an alphabet  $\Sigma$  and a formal language  $L \subseteq \Sigma^*$ , the **Kleene closure** of  $L$ , denoted as  $L^*$ , is the union of all  $L^n$  for  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ :

$$L^* := \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} L^n = L^0 \cup L^1 \cup L^2 \cup \dots$$

Note that  $\lambda \in L^*$ , so  $L^*$  is never empty, even when  $L = \{\}$ .

The Kleene closure is named after [Stephen Cole Kleene](#) (1909–1994), who invented regular expressions.

◊

The previous example highlights that the Kleene closure of a finite language can be infinite. Specifically,  $L^*$  will be infinite whenever  $L$  contains a string different from  $\lambda$ .

**Definition 7 (Power of a string,  $s^n$ )** For a string  $s$  and a non-negative integer  $n \in \mathbb{N}$ , the expression  $s^n$  is defined inductively:

B.C.:  $n = 0$ :

$$s^0 := \lambda.$$

I.S.:  $n \mapsto n + 1$ :

$$s^{n+1} := s^n \cdot s, \quad \text{where } s^n \cdot s \text{ represents the concatenation of } s^n \text{ and } s.$$

◊

**Example:** Let  $\Sigma = \{a, b\}$  and  $L = \{a\}$ . Then

$$L^* = \{a^n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\},$$

where  $a^n$  represents a string of  $n$  consecutive a's.

◊

## 2.2 The Formal Definition of Regular Expressions

We proceed to define the set of regular expressions for a given alphabet  $\Sigma$ . This set is denoted as  $\text{RegExp}_\Sigma$ , and is defined inductively. Simultaneously, we define the function

$$L : \text{RegExp}_\Sigma \rightarrow 2^{\Sigma^*},$$

which interprets each regular expression  $r$  as a formal language  $L(r) \in 2^{\Sigma^*}$ .<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Given a set  $M$ , the **power set** of  $M$ , i.e., the set of all subsets of  $M$ , is denoted as  $2^M$ .

**Definition 8 (Regular Expressions, Stephen Cole Kleene)** The set  $\text{RegExp}_{\Sigma}$  of regular expressions on the alphabet  $\Sigma$  is defined inductively as follows:

1.  $\emptyset \in \text{RegExp}_{\Sigma}$

The regular expression  $\emptyset$  denotes the empty language, we have

$$L(\emptyset) := \{\}.$$

In order to avoid confusion we assume that the symbol  $\emptyset$  is not a member of the alphabet  $\Sigma$ , i.e. we have  $\emptyset \notin \Sigma$ .

2.  $\varepsilon \in \text{RegExp}_{\Sigma}$

The regular expression  $\varepsilon$  denotes the language that only contains the empty string  $\lambda$ :

$$L(\varepsilon) := \{\lambda\}.$$

Furthermore, we assume that  $\varepsilon \notin \Sigma$ .

3.  $c \in \Sigma \rightarrow c \in \text{RegExp}_{\Sigma}$ .

Every character from the alphabet  $\Sigma$  is a regular expression. This expression denotes the language that contains only the string  $c$ :

$$L(c) := \{c\}.$$

Observe that we identify characters with strings of length one.

4.  $r_1 \in \text{RegExp}_{\Sigma} \wedge r_2 \in \text{RegExp}_{\Sigma} \rightarrow r_1 + r_2 \in \text{RegExp}_{\Sigma}$

Starting from two regular expressions  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  we can use the infix operator “+” to build a new regular expression. This regular expression denotes the union of the languages described by  $r_1$  and  $r_2$ :

$$L(r_1 + r_2) := L(r_1) \cup L(r_2).$$

We have to assume that the symbol “+” does not occur in the alphabet  $\Sigma$ , i.e. we have “+”  $\notin \Sigma$ .

5.  $r_1 \in \text{RegExp}_{\Sigma} \wedge r_2 \in \text{RegExp}_{\Sigma} \rightarrow r_1 \cdot r_2 \in \text{RegExp}_{\Sigma}$

Starting from the regular expression  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  we can use the infix operator “.” to build a new regular expression. This regular expression denotes the product of the languages of  $r_1$  and  $r_2$ :

$$L(r_1 \cdot r_2) := L(r_1) \cdot L(r_2).$$

We have to assume that the symbol “.” does not occur in the alphabet  $\Sigma$ , i.e. we have “.”  $\notin \Sigma$ .

6.  $r \in \text{RegExp}_{\Sigma} \rightarrow r^* \in \text{RegExp}_{\Sigma}$

Given a regular expression  $r$ , the postfix operator “\*” can be used to create a new regular expression. This new regular expression denotes the Kleene closure of the language described by  $r$ :

$$L(r^*) := (L(r))^*.$$

We have to assume that “\*”  $\notin \Sigma$ .

7.  $r \in \text{RegExp}_{\Sigma} \rightarrow (r) \in \text{RegExp}_{\Sigma}$

Regular expressions can be surrounded by parentheses. This does not change the language denoted by the regular expression:

$$L((r)) := L(r).$$

We have to assume that the parentheses “(” and “)” do not occur in the alphabet  $\Sigma$ , i.e. we have “(”  $\notin \Sigma$  and “)”  $\notin \Sigma$ .  $\diamond$

Given the preceding definition, it is unclear whether we interpret the regular expression

$$a + b \cdot c$$

as either

$$(a + b) \cdot c \quad \text{or instead as} \quad a + (b \cdot c).$$

To remove this ambiguity, we assign [operator precedences](#) as follows:

1. The postfix operator “\*” has the highest precedence.
2. The infix operator “.” has a lower precedence than the postfix operator “\*” but a higher precedence than the infix operator “+”.
3. The infix operator “+” has the lowest precedence.

With these conventions, the expression

$$a + b \cdot c^*$$

is interpreted as

$$a + (b \cdot (c^*)).$$

**Examples:** In the following examples, the alphabet  $\Sigma$  is defined as

$$\Sigma := \{a, b, c\}.$$

1.  $r_1 := (a + b + c) \cdot (a + b + c)$

This expression  $r_1$  denotes the set of all strings from  $\Sigma^*$  that have length 2:

$$L(r_1) = \{w \in \Sigma^* \mid |w| = 2\}.$$

2.  $r_2 := (a + b + c) \cdot (a + b + c)^*$

This expression  $r_2$  denotes the set of all strings from  $\Sigma^*$  that have at least length 1:

$$L(r_2) = \{w \in \Sigma^* \mid |w| \geq 1\}.$$

3.  $r_3 := (b + c)^* \cdot a \cdot (b + c)^*$

This expression  $r_3$  denotes the set of all strings from  $\Sigma^*$  that have exactly one occurrence of the letter a:

$$L(r_3) = \left\{ w \in \Sigma^* \mid \#\{i \in \mathbb{N} \mid w[i] = a\} = 1 \right\}.$$

4.  $r_4 := (b + c)^* \cdot a \cdot (b + c)^* + (a + c)^* \cdot b \cdot (a + c)^*$

This expression  $r_4$  denotes the set of all strings from  $\Sigma^*$  that either contain exactly one occurrence of the letter a or exactly one occurrence of the letter b:

$$L(r_4) = \left\{ w \in \Sigma^* \mid \#\{i \in \mathbb{N} \mid w[i] = a\} = 1 \right\} \cup \left\{ w \in \Sigma^* \mid \#\{i \in \mathbb{N} \mid w[i] = b\} = 1 \right\}. \diamond$$

**Remark:** The syntax of regular expressions given here is the same as the syntax used in [HMU06]. However, the syntax used for regular expressions in programming languages like *Python* differs. These differences will be discussed later.  $\diamond$

**Exercise 1:**

- Assume  $\Sigma = \{a, b, c\}$ . Define a regular expression for the language  $L \subseteq \Sigma^*$  that consists of those strings that contain at least one occurrence of the letter “a” and one occurrence of the letter “b”.
- Assume  $\Sigma = \{0, 1\}$ . Specify a regular expression for the language  $L \subseteq \Sigma^*$  that consists of those strings  $s$  such that the **antepenultimate** character is the symbol “1”.
- Again, assume  $\Sigma = \{0, 1\}$ . Define a regular expression for the language  $L \subseteq \Sigma^*$  containing all those strings that do not contain the substring 110.
- Again, assume  $\Sigma = \{0, 1\}$ . What is the language  $L$  generated by the regular expression

$$(1 + \varepsilon) \cdot (0 \cdot 0^* \cdot 1)^* \cdot 0^*$$

$\diamond$

## 2.3 Algebraic Simplification of Regular Expressions

Given two regular expressions  $r_1$  and  $r_2$ , we use the notation

$$r_1 \doteq r_2 \quad \text{iff} \quad L(r_1) = L(r_2),$$

to indicate that  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  describe the same language. If the equation  $r_1 \doteq r_2$  holds, then we refer to  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  as **equivalent**. The following algebraic laws hold:

- $r_1 + r_2 \doteq r_2 + r_1$

This equation is true because the union operator is commutative for sets:

$$L(r_1 + r_2) = L(r_1) \cup L(r_2) = L(r_2) \cup L(r_1) = L(r_2 + r_1).$$

- $(r_1 + r_2) + r_3 \doteq r_1 + (r_2 + r_3)$

This equation is true because the union operator is associative for sets.

- $(r_1 \cdot r_2) \cdot r_3 \doteq r_1 \cdot (r_2 \cdot r_3)$

This equation is true because the concatenation of strings is associative, for any strings  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$  we have

$$(uv)w = u(vw).$$

This implies

$$\begin{aligned} L((r_1 \cdot r_2) \cdot r_3) &= \{xw \mid x \in L(r_1 \cdot r_2) \wedge w \in L(r_3)\} \\ &= \{(uv)w \mid u \in L(r_1) \wedge v \in L(r_2) \wedge w \in L(r_3)\} \\ &= \{u(vw) \mid u \in L(r_1) \wedge v \in L(r_2) \wedge w \in L(r_3)\} \\ &= \{uy \mid u \in L(r_1) \wedge y \in L(r_2 \cdot r_3)\} \\ &= L(r_1 \cdot (r_2 \cdot r_3)). \end{aligned}$$

The following equations are more or less obvious.

(d)  $\emptyset \cdot r \doteq r \cdot \emptyset \doteq \emptyset$

(e)  $\varepsilon \cdot r \doteq r \cdot \varepsilon \doteq r$

(f)  $\emptyset + r \doteq r + \emptyset \doteq r$

(g)  $(r_1 + r_2) \cdot r_3 \doteq r_1 \cdot r_3 + r_2 \cdot r_3$

(h)  $r_1 \cdot (r_2 + r_3) \doteq r_1 \cdot r_2 + r_1 \cdot r_3$

(i)  $r + r \doteq r$ , because

$$L(r + r) = L(r) \cup L(r) = L(r).$$

(j)  $(r^*)^* \doteq r^*$

We have

$$L(r^*) = \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} L(r)^n$$

and that implies  $L(r) \subseteq L(r^*)$ . This holds true if we replace  $r$  by  $r^*$ . Therefore

$$L(r^*) \subseteq L((r^*)^*)$$

holds. In order to prove the inclusion

$$L((r^*)^*) \subseteq L(r^*),$$

we consider the structure of the strings  $w \in L((r^*)^*)$ . Because of

$$L((r^*)^*) = \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} L(r^*)^n$$

we have  $w \in L((r^*)^*)$  if and only if there is an  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that there are strings  $u_1, \dots, u_n \in L(r^*)$  satisfying

$$w = u_1 \cdots u_n.$$

Because of  $u_i \in L(r^*)$  we find a number  $m(i) \in \mathbb{N}$  for every  $i \in \{1, \dots, n\}$  such that for  $j = 1, \dots, m(i)$  there are strings  $v_{i,j} \in L(r)$  satisfying

$$u_i = v_{1,i} \cdots v_{m(i),i}.$$

Combining these equations yields

$$w = v_{1,1} \cdots v_{m(1),1} v_{1,2} \cdots v_{m(2),2} \cdots v_{1,n} \cdots v_{m(n),n}.$$

Hence  $w$  is a concatenation of strings from the language  $L(r)$  and hence we have

$$w \in L(r^*).$$

This shows the inclusion  $L((r^*)^*) \subseteq L(r^*)$ .

(k)  $\emptyset^* \doteq \varepsilon$

(l)  $\varepsilon^* \doteq \varepsilon$

(m)  $r^* \doteq \varepsilon + r^* \cdot r$

(n)  $r^* \doteq (\varepsilon + r)^*$

## 2.4 Check your Understanding

- (a) What is the definition of  $L^*$  for a given formal language  $L$ ?
- (b) How is the set  $\text{RegExp}_\Sigma$  formally defined?
- (c) How is the function  $L : \text{RegExp}_\Sigma \rightarrow 2^{\Sigma^*}$  formally defined?
- (d) For  $r_1, r_2 \in \text{RegExp}_\Sigma$ , how is the equivalence  $r_1 \doteq r_2$  defined?
- (e) Simplify the following regular expressions:
  - i.  $\emptyset^*$
  - ii.  $\varepsilon^*$
  - iii.  $\varepsilon + r^* \cdot r$
  - iv.  $(\varepsilon + r)^*$

## Chapter 3

# Building Scanners with *Ply*

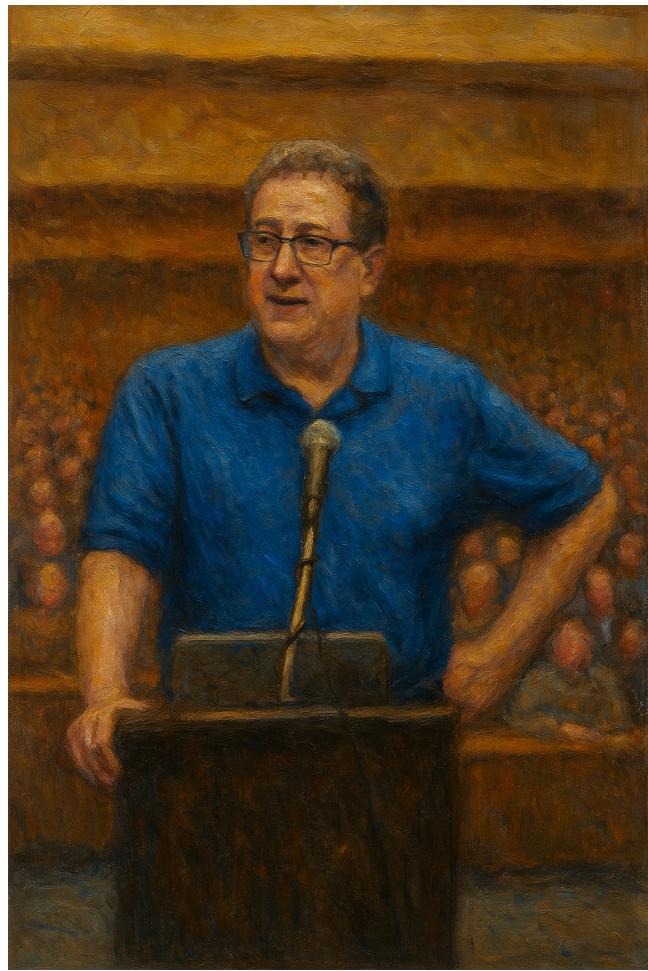


Figure 3.1: The creator of Ply, David M. Beazley.

After introducing the concept of regular expressions, we will now explore their practical applications. We examine the parser generator *Ply*, which is capable of generating both *Python scanners* and *Python parsers*. In this chapter, we will only discuss the generation of scanners via *Ply*. A [scanner](#) is a

program designed to segment a given string into a sequence of *tokens*, where a **token** is a contiguous string of characters that logically group together. To illustrate, consider the input for a C-compiler, which is an ASCII-string representing a valid C program. The compiler initially organizes these characters into various tokens, including:

1. **Keywords** or reserved words, such as, for example, “`if`”, “`while`”, “`for`”, and “`switch`”.
2. **Operator symbols**, for example “`+`”, “`+=`”, “`<`”, and “`<=`”.
3. **Parentheses**, which include “`(`”, “`[`”, “`{`”, and their corresponding closing symbols.
4. **Constants**, with C recognizing three types:
  - (a) Numerical constants, such as the integer “`42`” or the floating-point number “`1.23e2`”.
  - (b) String constants enclosed in double quotes, like “`"hello"`”.  
Note that the double quote character “`"`” is part of the string constant.
  - (c) Single-character constants wrapped in single quotes, as in “`'a'`”.  
Note that the single quote character “`'`” is part of the character constant.
5. **Identifiers**, which may serve as variable names, function names, or type names.
6. **Comments**, available in two forms: **Single-line comments** start with “`//`” and extend to the end of the line, while **multi-line comments** begin with “`/*`” and end with “`*/`”.
7. **Whitespace characters**, such as the **blank character** ‘’, the **tab** ‘`\t`’, the **newline** ‘`\n`’, and the **carriage return** ‘`\r`’.

Both whitespace characters and comments are generally discarded by the scanner.

---

```
1  /* Hello World program */
2  #include <stdio.h>
3
4  int main() {
5      printf("Hello World!");
6      return 1;
7 }
```

---

Figure 3.2: A straightforward C program.

For a more tangible example, consider Figure 3.2 on page 20, which presents a C program that outputs the string “Hello World!” along with a newline character. The scanner processes this program into the subsequent list of tokens:

```
[ "#", "include", "<", "stdio.h", ">", "int", "main", "(", ")", "{",
"printf", "(", "\"Hello World!\"", ")", ";", "return", "1", ";", "}" ]
```

Note that the scanner omits all white space characters, except those that occur inside string constants, as they are only used to demarcate tokens. Furthermore, the comment has been removed by the scanner.

While it is feasible to manually create a scanner, using a [scanner generator](#) makes the task considerably simpler. We will explore one such utility in the following section.

### 3.1 The Structure of a Ply Scanner Specification

In this section, we explore [Python Lex-Yacc](#), commonly known as *Ply*. According to its [official webpage](#),

*"Ply serves as a lex and yacc parsing toolkit for Python."*

[Lex](#) is a popular scanner generator for the programming language C, while [Yacc](#) is a parser generator for C. The toolkit *Ply* was developed by [David Beazley](#). In this section, we focus solely on its capabilities as a scanner generator. In Chapter 7 we will discuss how to use *Ply* as a parser generator.

To illustrate the core components of a *Ply* scanner specification, we consider a simple example that tokenizes arithmetic expressions. This example is adapted from the official *Ply* [documentation](#). A *Ply* scanner specification generally consists of three key parts, as demonstrated in Figure 3.3:

1. The module `ply.lex` contains the definition of the function `ply.lex.lex()` that is able to generate a scanner. Therefore, this module is imported in line 1.
2. The first part of a scanner specification is the [token declaration section](#). Syntactically, this is just a list containing the names of all tokens. Note that all token names have to start with a capital letter.

In Figure 3.3 the token declaration section extends from line 3 to line 11.

3. The second part contains the [token definitions](#). There are two kinds of token definitions:

- (a) [Immediate token definitions](#) have the following form:

```
t_NAME = r'regexp'
```

Here *NAME* has to be one of the names declared in the declaration section and *regexp* is a regular expression using the syntax that is specified in the [Python re module](#).

- (b) [Functional token definitions](#) are syntactically *Python function definitions* and have the following form:

```
def t_NAME(t):
    r'regexp'
    :
```

Here, the vertical dots “`:`” denote any *Python* code, while *NAME* has to be one of the token names declared in the declaration section and *regexp* is a regular expression.

The functional token definition shown in line 20–23 takes a token *t* as its argument. This token has the attribute *t.value*, which refers to the string that has been recognized as this token. In this case, this string is a sequence of digits that can be interpreted as a number. In

line 22 the function `t_NUMBER` converts this string into a number and stores this number as the attribute `t.value`. Finally, the token `t` itself is returned. This is a typical case where we need a functional token definition since we want to modify the token that is returned.

In Figure 3.3 the token definitions start in line 13 and end in line 23.

#### 4. The third part deals with the handling of newlines, ignored characters, and scanner errors.

- (a) A Ply input file may contain the definition of the function `t_newline`. This function is supposed to deal with newlines contained in the input. The main purpose of this function is to set the counter `t.Lexer.lineno`. Every token `t` has the attribute `t.Lexer`, which is a reference to the scanner object. In turn, the scanner object has the attribute `lineno`, which is supposed to be an integer containing the number of the line currently scanned. This integer starts at the value 1. Every time a newline is read it should be incremented.

In line 26 the regular expression `r'\n+'` matches any positive number of newlines. Hence the counter `lineno` has to be incremented by the length of the string `t.value`.

Note that the function `t_newline` does not return a token.

- (b) Line 29 specifies that both blanks and tabs should be ignored by the scanner. Note that the string

`"\t"`

is not interpreted as a regular expression but rather as a list of its characters. Furthermore, this is not a raw string and must not be prefixed with the character “`r`”, for otherwise the character sequence “`\t`” would not be interpreted as a tab symbol.

- (c) The function `t_error` deals with characters that can not be recognized. An error message is printed and the call `t.Lexer.skip(1)` discards the character that could not be matched.

#### 5. In line 35 the function `lex.lex` creates the scanner that has been specified.

#### 6. Line 38 shows how data can be fed into this scanner.

#### 7. In order to use this scanner we can just iterate over it as shown in line 40. This iteration scans the input string using the generated scanner and produces the tokens that are recognized by the scanner one by one.

Executing the program depicted in Figure 3.3 yields the following output:

```
LexToken(NUMBER, 3, 1, 0)
LexToken(PLUS, '+', 1, 2)
LexToken(NUMBER, 4, 1, 4)
% ... (rest of the output)
LexToken(NUMBER, 2, 1, 27)
```

The scanner returns tokens as instances of the `LexToken` class, which possess four distinct attributes:

1. The `type` attribute indicates the type of the token. It holds a string value that corresponds to one of the declared tokens.
2. The `value` attribute usually contains the recognized string. However, this attribute is mutable, allowing for transformations. For instance, the function `t_NUMBER` converts this string into an integer.

---

```
 1 import ply.lex as lex
 2
 3 tokens = [
 4     'NUMBER',
 5     'PLUS',
 6     'MINUS',
 7     'TIMES',
 8     'DIVIDE',
 9     'LPAREN',
10     'RPAREN'
11 ]
12
13 t_PLUS      = r'\+'
14 t_MINUS     = r'-'
15 t_TIMES     = r'\*'
16 t_DIVIDE    = r'/'
17 t_LPAREN    = r'\('
18 t_RPAREN    = r'\)'
19
20 def t_NUMBER(t):
21     r'0|[1-9][0-9]*'
22     t.value = int(t.value)
23     return t
24
25 def t_newline(t):
26     r'\n+'
27     t.lexer.lineno += len(t.value)
28
29 t_ignore = ' \t'
30
31 def t_error(t):
32     print("Illegal character '%s'" % t.value[0])
33     t.lexer.skip(1)
34
35 lexer = lex.lex()
36
37 data = '3 + 4 * 10 + 007 + (-20) * 2'
38 lexer.input(data)
39
40 for tok in lexer:
41     print(tok)
```

---

Figure 3.3: A simple scanner Specification for Ply.

3. The `Lineno` attribute specifies the line number where the token was identified.
4. The `Lexpos` attribute serves as a counter, incremented for each character read.

**Homework:** Install *Ply* and verify that the previously presented example operates as expected. The program *Ply* can be installed via the following command provided the appropriate *conda* environment has already been activated:

```
conda install -c conda-forge ply
```

## 3.2 The Syntax of Regular Expressions in *Python*

In the preceding chapter, we introduced regular expressions using a minimalistic syntax. While this simplicity is advantageous for the theoretical discussions in the upcoming chapter—where we explore the implementation of regular expressions via finite state machines—it can be limiting in practical applications. To address this, the *Python* module `re` offers various syntactic abbreviations that facilitate the use of complex regular expressions in a more concise manner. For an in-depth look at these features, I have authored a brief tutorial at

[github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/Python/Chapter-3/02-Regexp-Tutorial.ipynb](https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/Python/Chapter-3/02-Regexp-Tutorial.ipynb)

that focuses on the key aspects of the `re` module's regular expressions. For an interactive experience, it is advisable to consult this tutorial directly.

The web page [regex101.com](http://regex101.com) can be used to test regular expressions for various programming languages. Furthermore the web page <https://regexlearn.com/de/learn/regex101> provides a free interactive tutorial for regular expressions.

## 3.3 A Complex Example: Evaluating an Exam

This section presents a more complex example that shows some of the power of *Ply*. The task at hand is the evaluation of an exam. When I mark an exam I create a file that has a format similar to the example shown in Figure 3.4.

---

```
1 Class: Algorithms and Complexity
2 Group: TINF22AI1
3 MaxPoints = 60
4
5 Exercise:      1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.
6 Jim Smith:     9 12 10 6 6 0
7 John Slow:     4 4 2 0 - -
8 Susi Sorglos:  9 12 12 9 9 6
```

---

Figure 3.4: Results of an Exam

1. The first line contains the keyword “Class”, a colon “：“, and then the name of the lecture.

2. The second line specifies the group that has taken the exam.
3. The third line specifies the number of points that are necessary to obtain the best mark.
4. The fourth line is empty.
5. The fifth line numbers the exercises.
6. After that, there is a table. Every row in this table lists the scores achieved by a student for each of the exercises. The name of each student is at the beginning of each row. The name is followed by a colon and after that there is a list of the scores achieved for each exercise. If an exercise has not been attempted at all, the corresponding column contains a hyphen “-”.

I have written a *Jupyter notebook* that is able to evaluate data of this kind. You can find the notebook here:

[github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/Python/Chapter-03/03-Exam-Evaluation.ipynb](https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/Python/Chapter-03/03-Exam-Evaluation.ipynb)

## 3.4 Scanner States

Sometimes, regular expressions are not quite enough and it is beneficial for the scanner to have different states. The following example illustrates this. We will develop a program that is able to convert an `HTML` file into a pure text file. This program is actually quite useful: Some years ago I had a student who was blind. If he read a web page, he would use his Braille display. For him, the `HTML` markup was of no use so if the markup was removed, he could read web pages faster. In order to develop the program to remove `HTML` tags, we have to use [scanner states](#). The idea behind scanner states is that the scanner can use different regular expressions for different parts of the input. For example, the header of an `HTML` file, i.e. the part that is between the `<head>` and `</head>` tags, can just be skipped. On the other hand, the text inside the `<body>` and `</body>` tags needs to be echoed after any remaining tags have been removed. The easiest way to achieve this is by using scanner states and switching between them. The following notebook shows how this can be done:

[github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/Python/Chapter-03/04-Html2Text.ipynb](https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/Python/Chapter-03/04-Html2Text.ipynb)

**Exercise 2:** The purpose of the following exercise is to transform `LATEX` into `MATHML`. `LATEX` is a document markup language that is especially well suited to present text that contains mathematical formulas. In fact, these lecture notes have all been typeset using `LATEX`. `MATHML` is the part of `HTML` that deals with the representation of mathematical formulas. As `LATEX` provides a very rich document markup language and we can only afford to spend a few hours on this exercise, we confine ourselves to a small subset of `LATEX`. Figure 3.5 on page 26 shows the example input file that we want to transform in `HTML`. If this example file is typeset using `LATEX`, it is displayed as shown in Figure 3.6 on page 26. The program that you are going to develop should transform the `LATEX` input file into an `HTML` file. For your convenience, all these files are available in the `github` directory

[Python/Chapter-03/05-LaTeX2HTML.ipynb](https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/Python/Chapter-03/05-LaTeX2HTML.ipynb)

This directory contains also the *Jupyter notebook* `LaTeX2HTML.ipynb`. This notebook contains lots of predefined functions that are useful in order to solve the given task.

```
\documentclass{article}
\begin{document}
The sum of the squares of the first  $n$  natural numbers is given as:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n i^2 = \frac{1}{6} \cdot n \cdot (n+1) \cdot (2n+1)$$

According to Pythagoras, the length of the hypotenuse of a right triangle is
the square root of the squares of the length of the two catheti:

$$c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$$

The area of a circle is given as

$$A = \pi \cdot r^2$$

while its circumference satisfies

$$C = 2 \cdot \pi \cdot r$$

\end{document}
```

Figure 3.5: An example  $\text{\LaTeX}$  input file.

The sum of the squares of the first  $n$  natural numbers is given as:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n i^2 = \frac{1}{6} \cdot n \cdot (n+1) \cdot (2n+1).$$

According to Pythagoras, the length of the hypotenuse of a right triangle is the square root of the squares of the length of the two catheti:

$$c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$$

The area  $A$  of a circle is given as

$$A = \pi \cdot r^2,$$

while its circumference satisfies

$$C = 2 \cdot \pi \cdot r.$$

Figure 3.6: Output produced by the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  file shown in Figure 3.5

In order to do this exercise, you have to understand a little bit about  $\text{\LaTeX}$  and about  $\text{MATHML}$ . In the following, we discuss those features of these two language that are needed in order to solve the given problem.

1. A  $\text{\LaTeX}$  input file has the following structure:

(a) The first line list the type of the document. In our example, it reads

`\documentclass{article}.`

This line will be transformed into the following HTML:

```
<html>
<head>
```

```
<script type="text/javascript"
src="http://cdn.mathjax.org/mathjax/latest/MathJax.js?config=TeX-AMS-MML_
</script>
</head>
```

Here, the `<script>` tag is necessary in order for the `MATHML` to be displayed correctly.

- (b) The next line has the form:

```
\begin{document}
```

This line precedes the content and should be translated into the tag

```
<body>.
```

- (c) After that, the `LATEX` file consists of text that contains mathematical formula.  
(d) The `LATEX` input file finishes with a line of the form

```
\end{document}.
```

This line should be translated into the tags

```
</body></html>.
```

2. In `LATEX`, an inline formula is started and ended with a single dollar symbol “\$”. In `MATHML`, an inline formula is written as

```
<math xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML" display='inline'>...</math>
```

Here, I have used “...” to represent the mathematical content of the formula.

3. In `LATEX`, a formula that is displayed in its own line is started and ended with the string “\$\$. In `MATHML`, these formulas are called **block formulas** and are written as

```
<math xmlns="http://www.w3.org/1998/Math/MathML" display='block'>...</math>
```

Again, I have used “...” to represent the mathematical content of the formula.

4. While in `LATEX` a mathematical variable does not need any special markup, in `MATHML` a mathematical variable is written using the tags `<mi>` and `</mi>`. For example, the mathematical variable *n* is written as

```
<mi>n</mi>.
```

5. While in `LATEX` a number does not need any special markup, in `MATHML` a number is written using the tags `<mn>` and `</mn>`. For example, the number 3.14159 is written as

```
<mn>3.14159</mn>.
```

6. In `LATEX` the mathematical constant  $\pi$  is written using the command “\pi”. In `MATHML`, we have to make use of the HTML entity “&pi;” and hence we would write  $\pi$  as

```
<mn>&pi;</mn>.
```

7. In `LATEX` the multiplication operator “.” is written using the command “\cdot”. In `MATHML`, we have to make use of the HTML entity “&sdot;” and hence we would write “.” as

```
<mop>&sdot;</mop>.
```

8. While in  $\text{\LaTeX}$  most operator symbols stand for themselves, in  $\text{MATHML}$  an operator is surrounded by the tags `<mop>` and `</mop>`. For example, the operator  $+$  is written as

$$<\text{mop}>+</\text{mop}>.$$

9. In  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , raising an expression  $e$  to the  $n$ th power is done using the operator “ $\wedge$ ”. Furthermore, the exponent should be enclosed in the curly braces “ $\{$ ” and “ $\}$ ”. For example, the code to produce the term  $x^2$  is

$$x^{\{2\}}.$$

In  $\text{MATHML}$ , raising an expression to a power is achieved using the tags `<msup>` and `</msup>`. For example, in order to display the term  $x^2$ , we have to write

$$<\text{msup}><\text{mi}>x</\text{mi}><\text{mn}>2</\text{mn}></\text{msup}>.$$

10. In  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , taking the square root of an expression is done using the command “ $\sqrt$ ”. The argument has to be enclosed in curly braces. For example, in order to produce the output  $\sqrt{a+b}$ , we have to write

$$\sqrt{a+b}.$$

In  $\text{MATHML}$ , taking the square root makes use of the tags `<msqrt>` and `</msqrt>`. The example shown above can be written as

$$<\text{msqrt}><\text{mi}>a</\text{mi}><\text{mop}>+</\text{mop}><\text{mi}>b</\text{mi}></\text{msqrt}>.$$

11. In  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , writing a fraction is done using the command “ $\frac$ ”. This command takes two arguments, the numerator and the denominator. Both of these have to be enclosed in curly braces. For example, in order to produce the output  $\frac{a+b}{2}$ , we have to write

$$\frac{a+b}{2}.$$

In  $\text{MATHML}$ , a fraction is created via the tags `<mfrac>` and `</mfrac>`. Additionally, if the arguments contain more than a single element, each of them has to be enclosed in the tags `<mrow>` and `</mrow>`. The example shown above can be written as

$$<\text{mfrac}><\text{mrow}><\text{mi}>a</\text{mi}><\text{mop}>+</\text{mop}><\text{mi}>b</\text{mi}></\text{mrow}><\text{mn}>2</\text{mn}></\text{mfrac}>.$$

12. In  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , writing a sum is done using the command “ $\sum\limits$ ”. This command takes two arguments: The first argument gives the indexing variable together with its lower bound, while the second argument gives the upper bound. The first argument is started using the string “ $_$ ” and ended using the string “ $\}$ ”, while the second argument is started using the string “ $^$ ” and ended using the string “ $\}$ ”. For example, in order to produce the output

$$\sum_{i=1}^n i,$$

we have to write

$$\sum\limits_{\{i=1\}}^{\{n\}} i.$$

In  $\text{MATHML}$ , a sum with lower and upper limits is created via the tags `<munderover>` and `</munderover>` and the HTML entity “ $\&sum$ ”. The tag `munderover` takes three arguments:

- (a) The first argument is the operator, so in this case it is the entity “ $\&sum$ ”.

- (b) The second argument initializes the indexing variable of the sum.
- (c) The third argument provides the upper bound.

The second argument usually contains more than a single item and therefore has to be enclosed in the tags `<mrow>` and `</mrow>`. Hence, the example shown above would be written as follows:

```
<munderover>
    <mo>&sum;</mo>
    <mrow>
        <mi>i</mi> <mo>=</mo> <mn>1</mn>
    </mrow>
    <mi>n</mi>
</munderover>
```

**Remark:** The most important problem that you have to solve is the following: Once you encounter a closing brace “`}`” you have to know whether this brace closes the argument of a square root, a fraction, a sum, or an exponent. You should be aware that, for example, square roots and fractions can be nested. Hence, it is not enough to have a single variable that remembers whether you are parsing, say, a square root or a fraction. Instead, every time you encounter a string like, e.g.

`\sqrt{` or `\frac{`,

you should store the current state on a stack and set the new state according to whether you have just seen the keyword “`\frac`” or “`\sqrt`” or whatever caused the curly brace to be opened. When you encounter a closing brace “`}`”, you should restore the state to its previous value by looking up this value from the stack. ◇

## 3.5 Check your Understanding

- (a) How are regular expressions defined in *Python*?
- (b) Do you understand the structure of a *Ply* scanner specification?
- (c) Are you able to use *Ply* to write a program that reads a given text, finds all numbers inside this text that are followed by a \$ symbol and that then converts these numbers to their equivalent value in €? Assume that  $1\$ = 0.85\text{€}$ .

# Chapter 4

## Finite Automatons

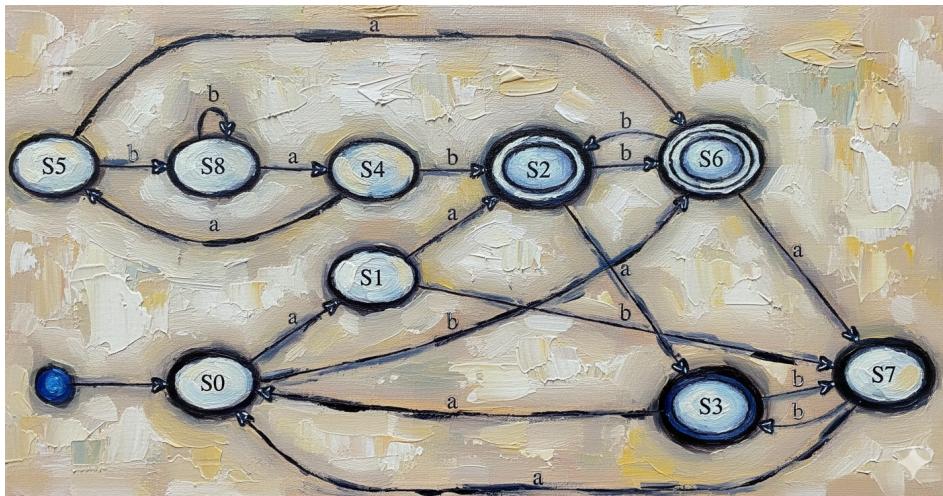


Figure 4.1: A finite state machine.

In the previous chapter we have seen how we can generate scanners from regular expressions. In this chapter we learn how regular expressions can be implemented using [finite state automata](#), abbreviated as FSAs. There are two kinds of FSAs: The [deterministic](#) ones known as [deterministic finite automaton](#), abbreviated as DFA and the non-deterministic ones known as [non-deterministic finite automaton](#), abbreviated as NFA. Although NFAs seem to be more powerful than DFAs, we will see that every NFA can be transformed into an equivalent DFA. After proving this result, we show how a regular expression can be translated into an equivalent NFA. Finally, we show that the language recognized by any DFA can be described by an equivalent regular expression. Therefore, the central result of this chapter is the equivalence of FAs and regular expressions. In detail, the results proved in this chapter are as follows:

- (a) The language described by a regular expression can be defined by a NFA.
- (b) Every NFA can be transformed into an equivalent DFA.
- (c) For every DFA there is a regular expression specifying the language recognized by this DFA.

## 4.1 Deterministic Finite Automatons

The finite state automatons that we are going to discuss in this chapter are used to read a string and to decide whether this string is an element of a given language. Hence, the input of these DFAs is a string, while the output is either the value True or the value False. The name giving feature of an DFA is the fact that an DFA only has a finite number of possible states. Reading a character causes the DFA to change its state. A DFA accepts its input if it has reached a so called **accepting state** after reading all characters of the input string. Let me explain this idea more precisely:

- (a) Initially, the DFA is in a state that is known as the **start state**.
- (b) In every step of its computation, the DFA reads one character of the input string  $s$ . Every time a character is processed, the state of the DFA might change.
- (c) Some states of the DFA are designated as **accepting states**. If the DFA has consumed all characters of the given input string  $s$  and the DFA has reached an accepting state, then the input string  $s$  is accepted and the DFA returns True. Otherwise the DFA returns False and the string  $s$  is rejected.

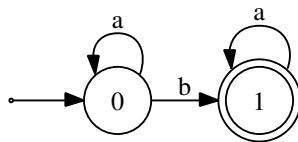


Figure 4.2: A DFA to recognize the language  $L(a^* \cdot b \cdot a^*)$ .

Finite state automatons are best presented graphically. Figure 4.2 depicts a simple DFA that recognizes those strings that are specified by the regular expression

$$a^* \cdot b \cdot a^*.$$

This DFA has but two states. These states are called 0 and 1.

1. State 0 is the start state. In Figure 4.2, the start state is indicated by an arrow coming from the left that points to it.

If the DFA is in the state 0 and reads the character “a”, then the DFA stays in the state 0. This is specified in the figure by an arrow labeled with the character “a” that both starts and ends in the state 0. On the other hand, if the character “b” is read while the DFA is in state 0, then the DFA switches into the state 1. This is depicted by an arrow labeled with the character “b” that originates from the state 0 and points to the state 1.

2. State 1 is an accepting state. In Figure 4.2 this is specified by the fact that the state 1 is decorated by a double circle.

If the character “a” is read while the DFA is in state 1, then the DFA does not change its state. On the other hand, if the DFA reads the character “b” while in state 1, then the next state is undefined since there is no arrow originating from state 1 that is labeled with the character “b”.

In general, a DFA **dies** if it reads a character  $c$  in a state  $s$  such that there is no transition from  $s$  when  $c$  is read. In this case, the DFA does not accept the given input string.

Formally, a **deterministic finite automaton** is defined as a 5-tuple.

**Definition 9 (DFA)** A **deterministic finite automaton** (abbreviated as DFA) is a 5-tuple

$$F = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle$$

where the components  $Q$ ,  $\Sigma$ ,  $\delta$ ,  $q_0$ , and  $A$  have the following properties:

1.  $Q$  is the finite set of states.
2.  $\Sigma$  is the **input alphabet**. Therefore,  $\Sigma$  is a set of characters and the strings read by the DFA  $F$  are strings from the set  $\Sigma^*$ .
3.  $\delta : Q \times \Sigma \rightarrow Q \cup \{\Omega\}$   
is the **transition function**. For every state  $q \in Q$  and for all characters  $c \in \Sigma$  the expression  $\delta(q, c)$  computes the new state of the DFA  $F$  that is reached if  $F$  reads the character  $c$  while in state  $q$ . If  $\delta(q, c) = \Omega$ , then  $F$  **dies** when it is in state  $q$  and the next character is  $c$ .  
In the figures depicting DFAs transitions of the form  $\delta(q, c) = \Omega$  are not shown.
4.  $q_0 \in Q$  is the **start state**.
5.  $A \subseteq Q$  is the set of **accepting states**. □

**Example:** The DFA that is shown in Figure 4.2 is formally defined as follows:

$$F = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle,$$

where we have:

1.  $Q = \{0, 1\}$ ,
2.  $\Sigma = \{a, b\}$ ,
3.  $\delta = \{\langle 0, a \rangle \mapsto 0, \langle 0, b \rangle \mapsto 1, \langle 1, a \rangle \mapsto 1, \langle 1, b \rangle \mapsto \Omega\}$ ,
4.  $q_0 = 0$ ,
5.  $A = \{1\}$ .

In order to formally define the language  $L(F)$  that is accepted by a DFA  $F$  we generalize the transition function  $\delta$  to a new function

$$\delta^* : Q \times \Sigma^* \rightarrow Q \cup \{\Omega\}$$

that, instead of a single character, accepts a string as its second argument. The definition of  $\delta^*(q, w)$  is given by induction on the string  $w$ .

I.A.  $w = \lambda$ : We define

$$\delta^*(q, \lambda) := q,$$

because if a deterministic DFA does not read any character, it cannot change its state.

I.S.  $w = cv$  where  $c \in \Sigma$  and  $v \in \Sigma^*$ : We define

$$\delta^*(q, cv) := \begin{cases} \delta^*(\delta(q, c), v) & \text{provided } \delta(q, c) \neq \Omega; \\ \Omega & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

If  $F$  reads the string  $cv$ , it first reads the character  $c$ . Now if this causes  $F$  to change into the state  $\delta(q, c)$ , then  $F$  has to read the string  $v$  in the state  $\delta(q, c)$ . However, if  $\delta(q, c)$  is undefined, then  $\delta^*(q, cv)$  is undefined too.

**Definition 10 (Accepted Language,  $L(F)$ )** For a DFA  $F = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle$  the language accepted by  $F$  is called  $L(F)$  and is defined as

$$L(F) := \{s \in \Sigma^* \mid \delta^*(q_0, s) \in A\}.$$

Hence, the accepted language of  $F$  is the set of all those strings that take  $F$  from its start state into an accepting state.  $\diamond$

**Exercise 3:** Specify a DFA  $F$  such that  $L(F)$  is the set of all those strings  $s \in \{a, b\}^*$ , such that  $s$  contains the substring “aba”.  $\diamond$

**Complete Finite State Machines** Occasionally it is beneficial for a DFA  $F$  to be **complete**: A DFA

$$F = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle,$$

is **complete** if the transition function  $\delta$  never returns the undefined value  $\Omega$ , i.e. we have

$$\delta(q, c) \neq \Omega \quad \text{for all } q \in Q \text{ and } c \in \Sigma.$$

**Proposition 11** For every DFA  $F$  there exists a complete DFA  $\widehat{F}$  that accepts the same language as the DFA  $F$ , i.e. we have:

$$L(\widehat{F}) = L(F).$$

**Proof:** Assume  $F$  is given as

$$F = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle.$$

The idea is to define  $\widehat{F}$  by adding a new state to the set of states  $Q$ . This new state is called the **dead state**. If there is no next state for a given state  $q \in Q$  when a character  $c$  is processed, i.e. if we have

$$\delta(q, c) = \Omega,$$

then  $F$  changes into the dead state. Once  $F$  has reached a dead state, it will never leave this state.

The formal definition of the DFA  $\widehat{F}$  is done as follows: We introduce a new state  $\mathbb{X}$  which serves as the **dead state**. The only requirement is that  $\mathbb{X} \notin Q$ .

1.  $\widehat{Q} := Q \cup \{\mathbb{X}\}$ ,

the dead state is added to the set  $Q$ .

2.  $\widehat{\delta} : \widehat{Q} \times \Sigma \rightarrow \widehat{Q}$ ,

where the function  $\widehat{\delta}$  is defined as follows:

- (a)  $\delta(q, c) \neq \Omega \rightarrow \widehat{\delta}(q, c) = \delta(q, c) \quad \text{for all } q \in Q \text{ and } c \in \Sigma.$

If the state transition function is defined for the state  $q$  and the character  $c$ , then  $\widehat{\delta}(q, c)$  is the same as  $\delta(q, c)$ .

- (b)  $\delta(q, c) = \Omega \rightarrow \widehat{\delta}(q, c) = \mathbb{X} \quad \text{for all } q \in Q \text{ and } c \in \Sigma.$

If the state transition function  $\delta$  is undefined for the state  $q$  and the character  $c$ , then  $\widehat{\delta}(q, c)$  returns the dead state  $\mathbb{X}$ .

- (c)  $\widehat{\delta}(\mathbb{X}, c) = \mathbb{X} \quad \text{for all } c \in \Sigma,$

because there is no escape from death.

Hence the DFA  $\widehat{F}$  is given as follows:

$$\widehat{F} = \langle \widehat{Q}, \Sigma, \widehat{\delta}, q_0, A \rangle.$$

If  $F$  reads a string  $s$  without reaching an undefined state, then the behavior of  $F$  and  $\widehat{F}$  is the same. However, if  $F$  reaches an undefined state, then  $\widehat{F}$  instead switches into the dead state  and remains in this state regardless of the rest of the input string. As the dead state 

**Exercise 4:** Define a DFA that accepts the language specified by the regular expression

$$r := (a + b)^* \cdot b \cdot (a + b) \cdot (a + b).$$

$\diamond$

**Solution:** The regular expression  $r$  specifies those strings  $s$  from the alphabet  $\Sigma = \{a, b\}$  such that the antepenultimate character of  $s$  is the character “b”. In order to recognize this fact, the DFA has to remember the last three characters. As there are eight different possible combinations for the last three characters, the DFA needs to have eight states. Let us number these states  $0, 1, 2, \dots, 7$ . We describe the purpose of these states in the following:

**State 0:** In this state, the character “b” has not yet been seen. Depending on how many characters have been read, there are four cases:

- (a) At least three characters have been read. In this case, the last three characters are “aaa”.
- (b) Two characters have been read. In this case, the string that has been read so far is the string “aa”.
- (c) Only one character has been read so far. In this case, the string that has been read is “a”.
- (d) Nothing has yet been read and therefore the string that has been read is  $\lambda$ .

For the remaining states we list the last three characters that have been read without further comment.

**State 1:** “aab”.

This case also covers the cases where the strings “ab” and “b” have been read.

**State 2:** “aba”.

This case also cover the case where the string “ba” has been read.

**State 3:** “abb”.

This case also cover the case where the string “bb” has been read.

**State 4:** “bab”.

**State 5:** “bba”.

**State 6:** “bbb”.

**State 7:** “baa”.

Obviously, the states 4, 5, 6 and 7 are the accepting states because here the antepenultimate character is the character “b”. Next, we construct the transition function  $\delta$ .

0. First, let us consider the state 0. If the last three characters that have been read are “aaa” and if we read the character “a” next, then the last three characters read will again be “aaa”. Hence, we must have

$$\delta(0, a) = 0.$$

However, if instead we read the character “b” in state 0, then the last three characters that have been read are “aab”, which is exactly the last three characters that have been read in state 1. Hence we have

$$\delta(0, b) = 1.$$

1. Next we consider state 1. If the last three characters are “aab” and we read the character “a” next, then the last three characters are “aba”. This corresponds to the state 2. Therefore, we must have

$$\delta(1, a) = 2.$$

If instead we read the character “b” while in state 1, then the last three characters will be “abb”, which corresponds to the state number 3. Hence we have

$$\delta(1, b) = 3.$$

The remaining transitions are found in a similar way. Figure 4.3 on page 35 shows the resulting DFA. We still have to explain how we have chosen the start state. When the computation starts, the finite state machine has not read any character. In particular, this implies that neither of the last three characters is the character “b”. Hence we can use the state 0 as the start state of our DFA.

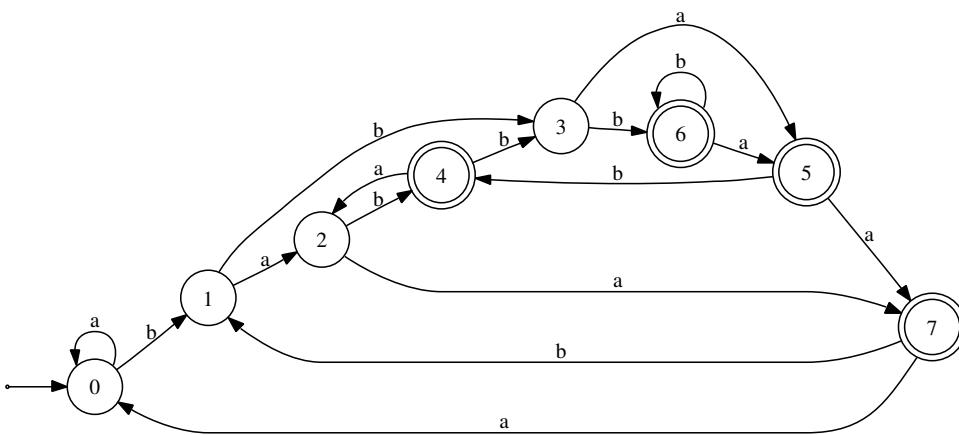


Figure 4.3: A DFA accepting  $L((a + b)^* \cdot b \cdot (a + b) \cdot (a + b))$ .

**Remark:** There is a nice tool available that can be used to better understand finite state machines. This tool is available at

[https://ivanzuzak.info/noam/webapps/fsm\\_simulator/](https://ivanzuzak.info/noam/webapps/fsm_simulator/).

## 4.2 Non-Deterministic Finite Automatons

For many applications, the DFAs introduced in the previous section are unwieldy because they have a large numbers of states. For example, the regular expression to recognize the language

$$L((a+b)^* \cdot b \cdot (a+b) \cdot (a+b))$$

needs 8 different states since the DFA needs to remember the last three characters that have been read and there are  $2^3 = 8$  combinations of these characters. It would be possible to simplify this finite state automaton if the automaton would be permitted to *choose* its next state from a given set of states.



Figure 4.4: A non-deterministic finite automaton to recognize  $L((a+b)^* \cdot b \cdot (a+b) \cdot (a+b))$ .

Figure 4.4 presents a **non-deterministic finite automaton** (abbreviated as NFA) that accepts the language specified by the regular expression

$$(a+b)^* \cdot b \cdot (a+b) \cdot (a+b).$$

This finite automaton has only 4 different states that are named 0, 1, 2 and 3.

1. 0 is the start state. If the NFA reads the letter a while it is in this state, the NFA will stay in state 0. However, if the NFA reads the character b, then the finite state automaton has a *choice*: It can either stay in state 0, or it might switch to the state 1.
2. In state 1 the finite state automaton switches to state 2 if it reads either the character a or the character b.
3. In state 2 the NFA switches to state 3 if it reads either the character a or the character b.
4. State 3 is the accepting state. There is no transition from this state. Hence, if the NFA is in state 3 and there are still characters to read, then the NFA dies.

The finite state automaton in Figure 4.4 is non-deterministic because it has to guess the next state if it is in state 0 and reads the character “b”. Let us consider a possible *computation* of the NFA when it reads the input “abab”:

$$0 \xrightarrow{a} 0 \xrightarrow{b} 1 \xrightarrow{a} 2 \xrightarrow{b} 3$$

In this computation, the NFA has chosen the correct transition when reading the first occurrence of the character “b”. If the NFA had stayed in the state 0 instead of switching into the state 1, it would have been impossible to reach the accepting state 3 later because then the computation would have worked out as follows:

$$0 \xrightarrow{a} 0 \xrightarrow{b} 0 \xrightarrow{a} 0 \xrightarrow{b} 1$$

Here, the NFA is in state 1 after consuming the input string “abab” and as state 1 is not an accepting state, the NFA would have falsely rejected the string “abab”. Let us consider a different example where the input is the string “bbbbbb”:

$$0 \xrightarrow{b} 0 \xrightarrow{b} 1 \xrightarrow{b} 2 \xrightarrow{b} 3 \xrightarrow{b} \Omega$$

Here, the NFA has switched to early into the state 1. In this case, the NFA dies when reading the last character “b”. If the NFA had stayed in state 0 when reading the second occurrence of the character “b”, then it would have correctly accepted the string “bbbbbb” since then the computation could have been as follows:

$$0 \xrightarrow{b} 0 \xrightarrow{b} 0 \xrightarrow{b} 1 \xrightarrow{b} 2 \xrightarrow{b} 3.$$

The previous examples show that in order to avoid premature death, the given non-deterministic NFA has to choose its successor state [wisely](#). If  $F$  is a non-deterministic NFA and  $s$  is a string such that  $F$  can, when reading  $s$ , choose its successor so that it reaches an accepting state after having read  $s$ , then the string  $s$  is an element of the language  $L(F)$ .

It seems that the concept of an NFA is far more powerful than the concept of a DFA. After all, a NFA appears to have some form of clairvoyance for else it could not guess which states to choose. However, we will prove in the next section that both DFAs and NFAs have the same power to recognize languages: Every language recognized by an NFA is also recognized by a DFA. In order to prove this claim, we have to formalize the notion of an NFA. The definition that follows is more general than the informal description of an NFAs given so far, as we will allow the NFA to also have [ε-transitions](#). An  $\epsilon$ -transition allows the NFA to switch its state without reading any character. For example, if there is an  $\epsilon$ -transition from the state 1 into the state 2, we write

$$1 \xrightarrow{\epsilon} 2.$$

**Definition 12 (NFA)** A [non-deterministic finite automaton](#) (abbreviated as [NFA](#)) is a 5-tupel

$$\langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle,$$

such that the following holds:

1.  $Q$  is the finite [set of states](#).
2.  $\Sigma$  is the [input alphabet](#).
3.  $\delta$  is a function from  $Q \times (\Sigma \cup \{\epsilon\})$  that assigns a set of states  $\delta(q, a) \subseteq Q$  to every pair  $\langle q, a \rangle$  from  $Q \times (\Sigma \cup \{\epsilon\})$ :

$$\delta : Q \times (\Sigma \cup \{\epsilon\}) \rightarrow 2^Q.$$

If  $a \in \Sigma$ , then  $\delta(q, a)$  is the set of states the NFA can switch to after reading the character  $a$  in state  $q$ . The set  $\delta(q, \epsilon)$  is the set of states that can be reached from the state  $q$  without reading a character.

As in the deterministic case,  $\delta$  is called the [transition function](#).

4.  $q_0 \in Q$  is the start state.
5.  $A \subseteq Q$  is the set of accepting states.

If we have  $q_2 \in \delta(q_1, \epsilon)$ , then the NFA has an [ε-transition](#) from the state  $q_1$  into the state  $q_2$ . This is written as

$$q_1 \xrightarrow{\epsilon} q_2.$$

If  $c \in \Sigma$  and  $q_2 \in \delta(q_1, c)$ , we write

$$q_1 \xrightarrow{c} q_2.$$

□

**Example:** For the NFA  $F$  shown in Figure 4.4 on page 36 we have

$$F = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, 0, A \rangle \quad \text{where}$$

1.  $Q = \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$ .
2.  $\Sigma = \{a, b\}$ .
3.  $\delta = \{\langle 0, a \rangle \mapsto \{0\}, \langle 0, b \rangle \mapsto \{0, 1\}, \langle 0, \varepsilon \rangle \mapsto \{\}, \langle 1, a \rangle \mapsto \{2\}, \langle 1, b \rangle \mapsto \{2\}, \langle 1, \varepsilon \rangle \mapsto \{\}, \langle 2, a \rangle \mapsto \{3\}, \langle 2, b \rangle \mapsto \{3\}, \langle 2, \varepsilon \rangle \mapsto \{\}, \langle 3, a \rangle \mapsto \{\}, \langle 3, b \rangle \mapsto \{\}, \langle 3, \varepsilon \rangle \mapsto \{\}\}$ .

It is more convenient to specify the transition function  $\delta$  as follows:

$$\delta := \{0 \xrightarrow{a} 0, 0 \xrightarrow{b} 0, 0 \xrightarrow{b} 1, 1 \xrightarrow{a} 2, 1 \xrightarrow{b} 2, 2 \xrightarrow{a} 3, 2 \xrightarrow{b} 3\}.$$

4. The start state is 0.
5.  $A = \{3\}$ , hence the only accepting state is 3.  $\diamond$

In order to formally define how an NFA processes its input we introduce the notion of a **configuration** of an NFA. A configuration is defined as a pair

$$\langle q, s \rangle$$

where  $q$  is a state and  $s$  is a string. Here,  $q$  is the current state of the NFA and  $s$  is the part of the input that has not yet been consumed. We define a binary relation  $\rightsquigarrow$  on configurations as follows:

$$\langle q_1, cs \rangle \rightsquigarrow \langle q_2, s \rangle \quad \text{iff} \quad q_1 \xrightarrow{c} q_2, \quad \text{i.e. if } q_2 \in \delta(q_1, c).$$

Therefore, we have  $\langle q_1, cs \rangle \rightsquigarrow \langle q_2, s \rangle$  if and only if the NFA transitions from the state  $q_1$  into the state  $q_2$  when the character  $c$  is consumed. Furthermore, we have

$$\langle q_1, s \rangle \rightsquigarrow \langle q_2, s \rangle \quad \text{iff} \quad q_1 \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} q_2, \quad \text{i.e. if } q_2 \in \delta(q_1, \varepsilon).$$

This accounts for the  $\varepsilon$  transitions. The **reflexive-transitive closure** of the relation  $\rightsquigarrow$  is written as  $\rightsquigarrow^*$ . The language accepted by an NFA  $F$  is denoted as  $L(F)$  and is defined as

$$L(F) := \{s \in \Sigma^* \mid \exists p \in A : \langle q_0, s \rangle \rightsquigarrow^* \langle p, \lambda \rangle\}.$$

Here,  $q_0$  is the start state and  $A$  is the set of accepting states. Hence, a string  $s$  is an element of the language  $L(F)$ , iff there is an accepting state  $p$  such that the configuration  $\langle p, \lambda \rangle$  is reachable from the configuration  $\langle q_0, s \rangle$ .

**Example:** The NFA  $F$  shown in Figure 4.4 accepts those strings  $w \in \{a, b\}^*$  such that the antepenultimate character of  $w$  is the character “b”:

$$L(F) = \{w \in \{a, b\}^* \mid |w| \geq 3 \wedge w[-3] = b\} \quad \diamond$$

**Exercise 5:** Specify an NFA  $F$  such that  $L(F)$  is the set of those strings from the language  $\{a, b\}^*$  that contain the substring “aba”.  $\diamond$

## 4.3 Transforming NFAs to DFAs

In this section we show how an NFA

$$F = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle$$

can be transformed into a DFA  $\text{det}(F)$  such that both finite automatons accept the same language, i.e. we have

$$L(F) = L(\text{det}(F))$$

The idea behind this transformation is that  $\text{det}(F)$  has to compute the **set** of all states that the  $F$  could be in after reading a string in the start state. Hence the states of  $\text{det}(F)$  are **sets** of states of  $F$ . A set of these states contains all those states that  $F$  could have reached when reading a character. Furthermore, a set  $M$  of states of  $F$  is an accepting state of  $\text{det}(F)$  if the set  $M$  contains an accepting state of  $F$ .

In order to present the construction of  $\text{det}(F)$  we first have to define two auxiliary functions. We start with the  **$\varepsilon$ -closure** of a given state. For every state  $q$  of the non-deterministic Fsm  $F$  the function

$$\text{ec} : Q \rightarrow 2^Q$$

computes the set  $\text{ec}(q)$  of all those states that  $F$  can reach by  $\varepsilon$  transitions from the state  $q$ . Formally, the set  $\text{ec}(q)$  is computed inductively:

B.C.:  $q \in \text{ec}(q)$ .

I.S.:  $p \in \text{ec}(q) \wedge r \in \delta(p, \varepsilon) \rightarrow r \in \text{ec}(q)$ .

If the state  $p$  is an element of the  $\varepsilon$ -closure of the state  $q$  and there is an  $\varepsilon$ -transition from  $p$  to some state  $r$ , then  $r$  is also an element of the  $\varepsilon$ -closure of  $q$ .

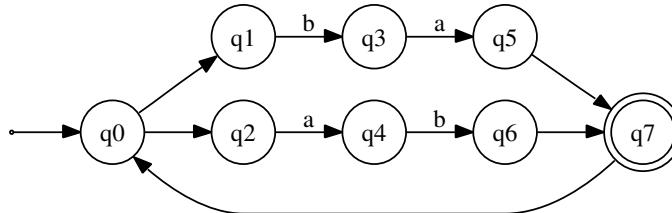


Figure 4.5: An NFA with  $\varepsilon$ -transitions.

**Example:** Figure 4.5 shows an NFA with  $\varepsilon$ -transitions. In this figure, the  $\varepsilon$ -transitions are shown as unlabelled arrows. We compute the  $\varepsilon$ -closure for all states:

1.  $\text{ec}(q_0) = \{q_0, q_1, q_2\}$ ,

2.  $\text{ec}(q_1) = \{q_1\}$ ,

3.  $\text{ec}(q_2) = \{q_2\}$ ,

4.  $\text{ec}(q_3) = \{q_3\}$ ,

5.  $\text{ec}(q_4) = \{q_4\}$ ,

$$6. \text{ec}(q_5) = \{q_5, q_7, q_0, q_1, q_2\},$$

$$7. \text{ec}(q_6) = \{q_6, q_7, q_0, q_1, q_2\},$$

$$8. \text{ec}(q_7) = \{q_7, q_0, q_1, q_2\}.$$

□

In order to transform an NFA into a DFA  $\text{det}(F)$  we have to extend the function  $\delta : Q \times (\Sigma \cup \{\varepsilon\}) \rightarrow 2^Q$  into the function

$$\widehat{\delta} : Q \times \Sigma \rightarrow 2^Q.$$

The idea is that given a state  $q$  and a character  $c$ ,  $\widehat{\delta}(q, c)$  is the set of all states that  $F$  could reach when it reads the character  $c$  in state  $q$  and then performs an arbitrary number of  $\varepsilon$ -transitions. Formally, the definition of  $\widehat{\delta}$  is as follows:

$$\widehat{\delta}(q_1, c) := \bigcup \{\text{ec}(q_2) \mid q_2 \in \delta(q_1, c)\}.$$

This formula is to be read as follows:

- (a) For every state  $q_2 \in Q$  that can be reached from the state  $q_1$  by reading the character  $c$  we compute the  $\varepsilon$ -closure  $\text{ec}(q_2)$ .
- (b) Then we take the union of all the sets  $\text{ec}(q_2)$  where  $q_2 \in \delta(q_1, c)$ .

**Example:** In continuation of the previous example (shown in Figure 4.5) we have:

$$1. \widehat{\delta}(q_0, a) = \{\},$$

because in state  $q_0$  there is no transition on reading the character  $a$ . Note that in our definition of the function  $\widehat{\delta}$  the  $\varepsilon$ -transitions are done only after the character has been read.

$$2. \widehat{\delta}(q_1, b) = \{q_3\},$$

because when the letter 'b' is read in the state  $q_1$  the FSM switches into the state  $q_3$  and the state  $q_3$  has no  $\varepsilon$ -transitions.

$$3. \widehat{\delta}(q_3, a) = \{q_5, q_7, q_0, q_1, q_2\},$$

because when the letter 'a' is read in the state  $q_3$  the FSM switches into the state  $q_5$ . From  $q_5$  the states  $q_7, q_0, q_1$  and  $q_2$  are reachable by  $\varepsilon$ -transitions. ◇

The function  $\widehat{\delta}$  maps a state into a set of states. Since  $\text{det}(F)$  uses sets of states of  $F$  as its states we need a function that maps sets of states of  $F$  into sets of states. Hence we generalize the function  $\widehat{\delta}$  to the function

$$\Delta : 2^Q \times \Sigma \rightarrow 2^Q$$

such that for a set  $M$  of states and a character  $c$  the expression  $\Delta(M, c)$  computes the set of all those states that  $F$  could be in if it is in a state from  $M$ , then reads the character  $c$ , and finally makes some  $\varepsilon$ -transitions. The formal definition is as follows:

$$\Delta(M, c) := \bigcup \{\widehat{\delta}(q, c) \mid q \in M\}.$$

This formula is easy to understand: For every state  $q \in M$  we compute the set of states that  $F$  could be in after reading the character  $c$  and doing some  $\varepsilon$ -transitions. Then we take the union of these sets.

**Example:** Continuing our previous example (shown in Figure 4.5) we have:

1.  $\Delta(\{q_0, q_1, q_2\}, a) = \{q_4\}$ ,
2.  $\Delta(\{q_0, q_1, q_2\}, b) = \{q_3\}$ ,
3.  $\Delta(\{q_3\}, a) = \{q_5, q_7, q_0, q_1, q_2\}$ ,
4.  $\Delta(\{q_3\}, b) = \{\}$ ,
5.  $\Delta(\{q_4\}, a) = \{\}$ ,
6.  $\Delta(\{q_4\}, b) = \{q_6, q_7, q_0, q_1, q_2\}$ .

◊

Now we are ready to formally define how  $\det(F)$  is constructed from  $F := \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle$ .

$$\det(F) := \langle 2^Q, \Sigma, \Delta, \text{ec}(q_0), \hat{A} \rangle$$

where the components of this tuple are defined as follows:

1. The set of states of  $\det(F)$  is the set of all subsets of  $Q$  and therefore it is equal to the power set  $2^Q$ .

Later we will see that we do not need all of these subsets. The reason is that the states are those subsets that can be reached from the start state  $q_0$  when some string has been read. In most cases there are some combinations of states that can not be reached and the corresponding sets are not really needed as states.

2. The input alphabet  $\Sigma$  does not change when going from  $F$  to  $\det(F)$ . After all, the  $\det(F)$  has to recognize the same language as  $F$ .
3. The previously defined function  $\Delta$  specifies how the set of states changes when a character is read.
4. The start state  $\text{ec}(q_0)$  of  $\det(F)$  is the set of all states that can be reached from the start state  $q_0$  of  $F$  via  $\varepsilon$ -transitions.
5. The set of accepting states  $\hat{A}$  is the set of those subsets of  $Q$  that do contain an accepting state of  $F$ :

$$\hat{A} := \{M \in 2^Q \mid M \cap A \neq \{\}\}.$$

**Exercise 6:** Transform the NFA  $F$  that is shown in Figure 4.4 on page 36 into a DFA  $\det(F)$ . ◊

**Solution:** We start by computing the set of states.

1. As we have  $\text{ec}(0) = \{0\}$ , the start state of  $\det(F)$  is the set containing 0.

$$S_0 := \text{ec}(0) = \{0\}.$$

2. As we have  $\delta(0, a) = \{0\}$  and there are no  $\varepsilon$ -transitions we have

$$\Delta(S_0, a) = \Delta(\{0\}, a) = \{0\} = S_0.$$

3. As we have  $\delta(0, b) = \{0, 1\}$  we conclude

$$S_1 := \Delta(S_0, b) = \Delta(\{0\}, b) = \{0, 1\}.$$

4. We have that  $\delta(0, a) = \{0\}$  and  $\delta(1, a) = \{2\}$ . Hence

$$S_2 := \Delta(S_1, a) = \Delta(\{0, 1\}, a) = \{0, 2\}.$$

5. We have  $\delta(0, b) \in \{0, 1\}$  and  $\delta(1, b) = \{2\}$ . Therefore

$$S_4 := \Delta(S_1, b) = \Delta(\{0, 1\}, b) = \{0, 1, 2\}$$

Similarly we derive the following:

6.  $S_3 := \Delta(S_2, a) = \Delta(\{0, 2\}, a) = \{0, 3\}$ .

7.  $S_5 := \Delta(S_2, b) = \Delta(\{0, 2\}, b) = \{0, 1, 3\}$ .

8.  $S_6 := \Delta(S_4, a) = \Delta(\{0, 1, 2\}, a) = \{0, 2, 3\}$ .

9.  $S_7 := \Delta(S_4, b) = \Delta(\{0, 1, 2\}, b) = \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$ .

10.  $\Delta(S_3, a) = \Delta(\{0, 3\}, a) = \{0\} = S_0$ .

11.  $\Delta(S_3, b) = \Delta(\{0, 3\}, b) = \{0, 1\} = S_1$ .

12.  $\Delta(S_5, a) = \Delta(\{0, 1, 3\}, a) = \{0, 2\} = S_2$ .

13.  $\Delta(S_5, b) = \Delta(\{0, 1, 3\}, b) = \{0, 1, 2\} = S_4$ .

14.  $\Delta(S_6, a) = \Delta(\{0, 2, 3\}, a) = \{0, 3\} = S_3$ .

15.  $\Delta(S_6, b) = \Delta(\{0, 2, 3\}, b) = \{0, 1, 3\} = S_5$ .

16.  $\Delta(S_7, a) = \Delta(\{0, 1, 2, 3\}, a) = \{0, 2, 3\} = S_6$ .

17.  $\Delta(S_7, b) = \Delta(\{0, 1, 2, 3\}, b) = \{0, 1, 2, 3\} = S_7$ .

These are all possible sets of states that  $\text{Fsm } \text{det}(F)$  can reach. For a better overview let us summarize the definitions of the individual states of the deterministic  $\text{Fsm}$ :

$$S_0 = \{0\}, S_1 = \{0, 1\}, S_2 = \{0, 2\}, S_3 = \{0, 3\}, S_4 = \{0, 1, 2\},$$

$$S_5 = \{0, 1, 3\}, S_6 = \{0, 2, 3\}, S_7 = \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$$

Therefore the set  $\widehat{Q}$  of the states of  $\text{det}(F)$  is given as follows:

$$\widehat{Q} := \{S_0, S_1, S_2, S_3, S_4, S_5, S_6, S_7\}.$$

The transition function  $\Delta$  is shown as a table:

$\Delta$	$S_0$	$S_1$	$S_2$	$S_3$	$S_4$	$S_5$	$S_6$	$S_7$
a	$S_0$	$S_2$	$S_3$	$S_0$	$S_6$	$S_2$	$S_3$	$S_6$
b	$S_1$	$S_4$	$S_5$	$S_1$	$S_7$	$S_4$	$S_5$	$S_7$

Finally we recognize that only the sets  $S_3, S_5, S_6$  and  $S_7$  contain the accepting state 3. Therefore we have

$$\widehat{A} := \{S_3, S_5, S_6, S_7\}.$$

Therefore we have now found  $\text{det}(F)$ . We have

$$\det(F) := \langle \widehat{Q}, \Sigma, \Delta, S_0, \widehat{A} \rangle.$$

This DFA is shown in Figure 4.6 on page 44.

We realize that  $\det(F)$  has 8 different states. The NFA  $F$  has 4 different states  $Q = \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$ . Hence the power set  $2^Q$  has 16 elements. Why then has  $\det(F)$  only 8 and not  $2^4 = 16$  states? The reason is that we can only reach those sets of states from the start 0 that contain the state 0 because no matter whether we read an a or a b,  $F$  can always choose to switch to the state 0. Therefore, every set of states that is reachable from the state 0 has to contain the state 0. Therefore, sets that do not contain 0 are not needed as states of  $\det(F)$ .

**Exercise 7:** Transform the NFA  $F$  that is shown in Figure 4.5 on page 39 into an equivalent DFA  $\det(F)$ .

◊

### 4.3.1 Implementation

It is straightforward to implement the theory developed so far. The *Jupyter notebook*

<https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/..Python/Chapter-04-05/01-NFA-2-DFA.ipynb>

contains a program that takes a NFA  $F$  and computes the DFA  $\det(F)$ .

## 4.4 From Regular Expression to NFAs

In this section we show how regular expressions can be implemented as an NFA. Given a regular expression  $r$  we will construct an NFA  $A(r)$  that accepts the language that is described by the regular expression  $r$ , i.e. we will have

$$L(A(r)) = L(r).$$

The NFA  $A(r)$  is defined by induction on the regular expression  $r$ . The NFA  $A(r)$  will have the following properties:

1.  $A(r)$  does not have a transition into its start state.
2.  $A(r)$  has exactly one accepting state. Furthermore, there are no transitions out of this state.

In the following we assume that  $\Sigma$  is the alphabet that has been used when constructing the regular expression  $r$ . Then we can define  $A(r)$  as follows:

1. The NFA  $A(\emptyset)$  is defined as

$$A(\emptyset) = \langle \{q_0, q_1\}, \Sigma, \{\}, q_0, \{q_1\} \rangle.$$

Note that this NFA has no transitions at all.

Figure 4.7 shows the NFA  $A(\emptyset)$ . It is obvious that we have  $L(A(\emptyset)) = \{\}$ .

2. The NFA  $A(\varepsilon)$  is defined as

$$A(\varepsilon) = \langle \{q_0, q_1\}, \Sigma, \{\langle q_0, \varepsilon \rangle \mapsto \{q_1\}\}, q_0, \{q_1\} \rangle.$$

Figure 4.8 shows the NFA  $A(\varepsilon)$ . We have that  $L(A(\varepsilon)) = \{\lambda\}$ , i.e. the NFA accepts only the empty string.

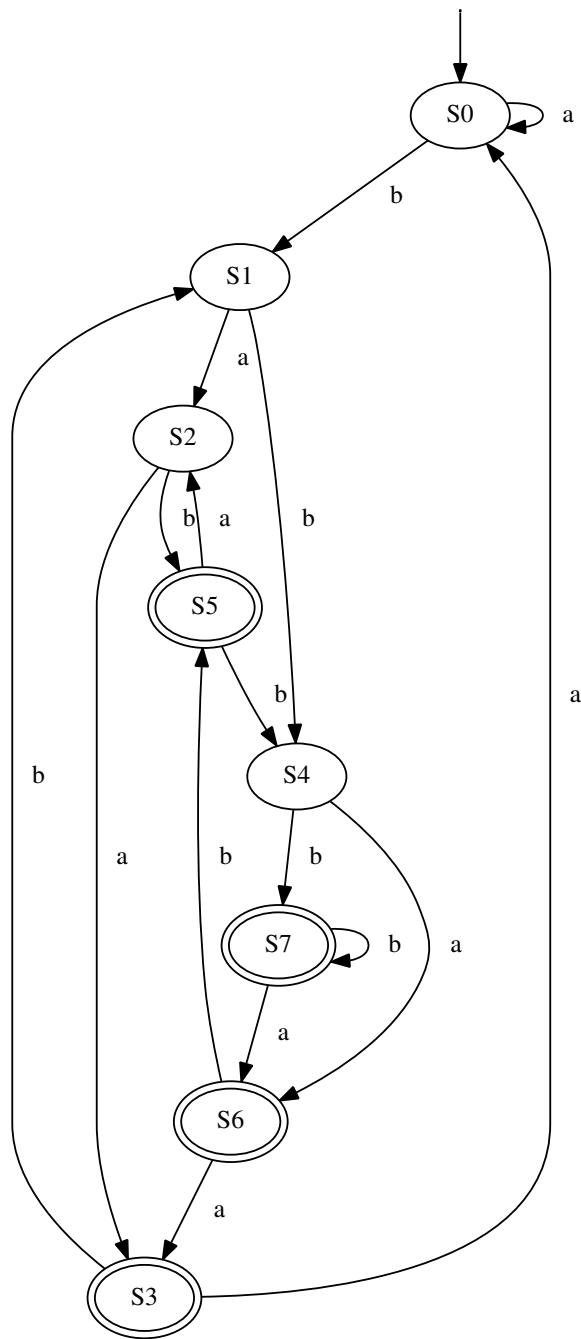
Figure 4.6: The deterministic Fsm  $\text{det}(F)$ .Figure 4.7: The NFA  $A(\emptyset)$ .

Figure 4.8: The NFA  $A(\varepsilon)$ .Figure 4.9: The NFA  $A(c)$ .

3. For a letter  $c \in \Sigma$  the NFA  $A(c)$  is defined as

$$A(c) = \langle \{q_0, q_1\}, \Sigma, \{\langle q_0, c \rangle \mapsto \{q_1\}\}, q_0, \{q_1\} \rangle.$$

Figure 4.9 shows  $A(c)$ . We have that  $L(A(c)) = \{c\}$ , i.e. the NFA accepts only the character  $c$ .

4. In order to define the NFA  $A(r_1 \cdot r_2)$  for the concatenation  $r_1 \cdot r_2$  we assume that we have already constructed finite state automata  $A(r_1)$  and  $A(r_2)$  such that  $L(A(r_1)) = L(r_1)$  and  $L(A(r_2)) = L(r_2)$ . Furthermore, without loss of generality we assume that the states in the NFAs  $A(r_1)$  and  $A(r_2)$  are different. This can always be achieved by renaming the states of  $A(r_2)$ . Next, we assume that  $A(r_1)$  and  $A(r_2)$  have the following form:

- (a)  $A(r_1) = \langle Q_1, \Sigma, \delta_1, q_1, \{q_2\} \rangle$ ,
- (b)  $A(r_2) = \langle Q_2, \Sigma, \delta_2, q_3, \{q_4\} \rangle$ ,
- (c)  $Q_1 \cap Q_2 = \{\}$ .

Then we can build the NFA  $A(r_1 \cdot r_2)$  from  $A(r_1)$  and  $A(r_2)$  as follows:

$$A(r_1 \cdot r_2) := \langle Q_1 \cup Q_2, \Sigma, \{\langle q_2, \varepsilon \rangle \mapsto \{q_3\}\} \cup \delta_1 \cup \delta_2, q_1, \{q_4\} \rangle$$

Here, the notation  $\{\langle q_2, \varepsilon \rangle \mapsto q_3\} \cup \delta_1 \cup \delta_2$  specifies that  $A(r_1 \cdot r_2)$  contains all transitions from both  $A(r_1)$  and  $A(r_2)$  and, furthermore, contains an  $\varepsilon$ -transition from  $q_2$  to  $q_3$ . Formally, this transition function  $\delta$  can be specified as follows:

$$\delta(q, c) := \begin{cases} \{q_3\} & \text{if } q = q_2 \text{ and } c = \varepsilon, \\ \delta_1(q, c) & \text{if } q \in Q_1 \text{ and } \langle q, c \rangle \neq \langle q_2, \varepsilon \rangle, \\ \delta_2(q, c) & \text{if } q \in Q_2. \end{cases}$$

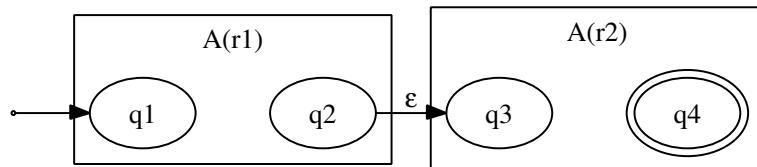
Figure 4.10: The NFA  $A(r_1 \cdot r_2)$ .

Figure 4.10 shows the NFA  $A(r_1 \cdot r_2)$ .

Instead of having an  $\varepsilon$ -transition from  $q_2$  to  $q_3$  we can identify the states  $q_2$  and  $q_3$ . The advantage is that the resulting NFA is smaller. We will do this when creating NFAs by hand.

I haven't done this identification in the definition above because both the graphical representation and the implementation get more complicated if we identify these states.

5. In order to define the NFA  $A(r_1 + r_2)$  we assume that we have already constructed finite state automaton  $A(r_1)$  and  $A(r_2)$  such that  $L(A(r_1)) = L(r_1)$  and  $L(A(r_2)) = L(r_2)$ . Furthermore, without loss of generality we assume that the states in the NFAs  $A(r_1)$  and  $A(r_2)$  are different and that  $A(r_1)$  and  $A(r_2)$  have the following form:

- (a)  $A(r_1) = \langle Q_1, \Sigma, \delta_1, q_1, \{q_3\} \rangle$ ,
- (b)  $A(r_2) = \langle Q_2, \Sigma, \delta_2, q_2, \{q_4\} \rangle$ ,
- (c)  $Q_1 \cap Q_2 = \{\}$ .

Then the NFA  $A(r_1 + r_2)$  is defined as follows:

$$\langle \{q_0, q_5\} \cup Q_1 \cup Q_2, \Sigma, \{ \langle q_0, \varepsilon \rangle \mapsto \{q_1, q_2\}, \langle q_3, \varepsilon \rangle \mapsto \{q_5\}, \langle q_4, \varepsilon \rangle \mapsto \{q_5\} \} \cup \delta_1 \cup \delta_2, q_0, \{q_5\} \rangle$$

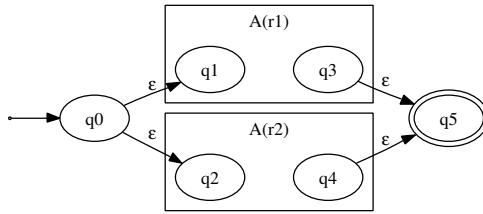


Figure 4.11: The NFA  $A(r_1 + r_2)$ .

Figure 4.11 shows the NFA  $A(r_1 + r_2)$ . In addition to the states of  $A(r_1)$  and  $A(r_2)$  there are two more states:

- (a)  $q_0$  is the start state of the NFA  $A(r_1 + r_2)$ ,
- (b)  $q_5$  is the only accepting state of the NFA  $A(r_1 + r_2)$ .

In addition to the transitions of  $A(r_1)$  and  $A(r_2)$  the NFA  $A(r_1 + r_2)$  has four more  $\varepsilon$ -transitions.

- (a) The new start state  $q_0$  has two  $\varepsilon$ -transitions leading to the start states  $q_1$  and  $q_2$  of the NFAs  $A(r_1)$  and  $A(r_2)$ .
- (b) Each of the accepting states  $q_3$  and  $q_4$  of the NFAs  $A(r_1)$  and  $A(r_2)$  has an  $\varepsilon$ -transition to the new accepting state  $q_5$ .

In order to simplify this NFA we could identify the three states  $q_0, q_1$  and  $q_2$  and the three states  $q_3, q_4$  and  $q_5$ . However, the resulting NFA would be more difficult to understand and hence we are not doing this when creating NFAs by hand.

6. In order to define the NFA  $A(r^*)$  we assume that we have already constructed a finite state automaton  $A(r)$  such that  $L(A(r)) = L(r)$  and that  $A(r)$  has the form

$$A(r) = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_1, \{q_2\} \rangle.$$

Then  $A(r^*)$  is defined as follows:

$$\langle \{q_0, q_3\} \cup Q, \Sigma, \{ \langle q_0, \varepsilon \rangle \mapsto \{q_1, q_3\}, \langle q_2, \varepsilon \rangle \mapsto \{q_1, q_3\} \} \cup \delta, q_0, \{q_3\} \rangle.$$

Figure 4.12 shows the NFA  $A(r^*)$ . In comparison with  $A(r)$  this NFA has two additional states.

Figure 4.12: The NFA  $A(r^*)$ .

- (a)  $q_0$  is the start state of  $A(r^*)$ ,
- (b)  $q_3$  is the only accepting state of  $A(r^*)$ .

The NFA  $A(r^*)$  has four more  $\epsilon$ -transitions than  $A(r)$ :

- (a) The new start state  $q_0$  has  $\epsilon$ -transitions to the states  $q_1$  and  $q_3$ .
- (b)  $q_2$  has an  $\epsilon$ -transition back to the state  $q_1$ .
- (c)  $q_2$  also has an  $\epsilon$ -transition to the state  $q_3$ .

**Attention:** If we would identify the two states  $q_0$  and  $q_1$  and the two states  $q_2$  and  $q_3$ , then the resulting NFA would no longer be correct!

**Exercise 8:** Construct an NFA for the regular expression

$$(a + b) \cdot a^* \cdot b.$$

◊

#### 4.4.1 Implementation

The Jupyter notebook

<https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/../Python/Chapter-04-05/03-Regexp-2-NFA.ipynb> implements the theory discussed in this section.

## 4.5 Translating a DFA into a Regular Expression

In this last section we start with a DFA  $F$  and construct a regular expression  $r$  such that we have

$$L(r) = L(F).$$

We assume that the DFA  $F$  is given as follows:

$$F = \langle \{q_0, q_1, \dots, q_n\}, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle.$$

For every pair of states  $\langle p_1, p_2 \rangle \in Q \times Q$  we define a regular expression  $r(p_1, p_2)$  such that  $r(p_1, p_2)$  describes those strings  $w$  that take the DFA  $F$  from the state  $p_1$  to the state  $p_2$ , i.e. we have

$$L(r(p_1, p_2)) = \{w \in \Sigma^* \mid \langle p_1, w \rangle \rightsquigarrow^* \langle p_2, \lambda \rangle\}.$$

The definition of  $r(p_1, p_2)$  is done by first defining auxiliary regular expressions  $r^{(k)}(p_1, p_2)$  for all  $k = 0, \dots, n+1$ . The regular expression  $r^{(k)}(p_1, p_2)$  specifies those strings that take the DFA  $F$  from the state  $p_1$  to the state  $p_2$  while only visiting states from the set

$$Q_k := \{q_i \mid i \in \{0, \dots, k-1\}\}$$

in between. Observe that

$$Q_0 = \{\} \quad \text{and} \quad Q_{n+1} = \{q_0, \dots, q_n\} = Q$$

To this end we define the ternary relation

$$\rightarrow_k \subseteq (Q \times \Sigma^* \times Q).$$

Given two states  $p, q \in Q$  and a string  $w$  we have that

$$p \xrightarrow{k} w q$$

holds iff the DFA  $F$  switches from the state  $p$  to the state  $q$  when it reads the string  $w$  but on reading  $w$  only visits states from the set  $Q_k$  **in-between**. Here, “in-between” specifies that the states  $p$  and  $q$  may well be outside of the set  $Q_k$ , only the states between  $p$  and  $q$  are required to be elements of  $Q_k$ . The formal definition of  $p \xrightarrow{k} w q$  is done by induction on  $w$ :

B.C.:  $|w| \leq 1$ . Then there are two cases:

$$(a) p \xrightarrow{\lambda} k p,$$

because when the empty string is read we can only reach the state  $p$  if we start in the state  $p$ .

$$(b) \delta(p, c) = q \Rightarrow p \xrightarrow{c} k q,$$

because when the DFA reads the character  $c$  and switches from state  $p$  directly to the state  $q$ , there are no states “inbetween”.

I.S.:  $w = cv$  where  $|v| \geq 1$ .

$$\text{Here we have: } p \xrightarrow{c} q \wedge q \in Q_k \wedge q \xrightarrow{v} r \Rightarrow p \xrightarrow{cv} r.$$

Now we are ready to define the regular expressions  $r^{(k)}(p_1, p_2)$  for all  $k = 0, \dots, n + 1$ . This definition will be done such that we have

$$L(r^{(k)}(p_1, p_2)) = \{w \in \Sigma^* \mid p_1 \xrightarrow{k} w p_2\}.$$

The definition of the regular expressions  $r^{(k)}(p_1, p_2)$  is done by induction on  $k$ .

B.C.:  $k = 0$ .

Then we have  $Q_0 = \{\}$ . Therefore, when the DFA switches from the state  $p_1$  to the state  $p_2$  it must not visit any states in-between. There are two cases.

$$(a) p_1 \neq p_2: \text{ Then we can have } p_1 \xrightarrow{w} p_2 \text{ only if } w \text{ contains but a single letter. Define}$$

$$\{c_1, \dots, c_l\} := \{c \in \Sigma \mid \delta(p_1, c) = p_2\}$$

as the set of all letters that take the DFA from the state  $p_1$  to the state  $p_2$ . If this set is not empty we define

$$r^{(0)}(p_1, p_2) := c_1 + \dots + c_l.$$

If this set is empty, then there is no direct transition from  $p_1$  to  $p_2$  and we define

$$r^{(0)}(p_1, p_2) := \emptyset.$$

$$(b) p_1 = p_2: \text{ Again we define}$$

$$\{c_1, \dots, c_l\} := \{c \in \Sigma \mid \delta(p_1, c) = p_1\}.$$

If this set is not empty we have

$$r^{(0)}(p_1, p_1) := c_1 + \cdots + c_l + \varepsilon.$$

Otherwise we have

$$r^{(0)}(p_1, p_1) := \varepsilon.$$

I.S.:  $k \mapsto k + 1$ .

We have that

$$Q_{k+1} = Q_k \cup \{q_k\}$$

Therefore, when compared to the regular expression  $r^{(k)}(p_1, p_2)$ , the regular expression  $r^{(k+1)}(p_1, p_2)$  describes strings that cause the DFA to potentially visit the state  $q_k$  in addition to the states from the set  $Q_k$ . If the DFA reads a string  $w$  that switches the state  $p_1$  to the state  $p_2$  while only using states from the set  $Q_{k+1}$ , then there are two cases.

- (a) We already have  $p_1 \xrightarrow{w} p_2$ , i.e. the DFA uses only states from  $Q_k$  and the state  $q_k$  isn't used.
- (b) The string  $w$  can be written as  $w = w_1 s_1 \cdots s_l w_2$  where we have:

- $p_1 \xrightarrow{w_1} q_k$ ,
- $q_k \xrightarrow{s_i} q_k$  for all  $i = \{1, \dots, l\}$ ,
- $q_k \xrightarrow{w_2} p_2$ .

Therefore we define

$$r^{(k+1)}(p_1, p_2) := r^{(k)}(p_1, p_2) + r^{(k)}(p_1, q_k) \cdot (r^{(k)}(q_k, q_k))^* \cdot r^{(k)}(q_k, p_2).$$

Now we are ready to define the regular expressions  $r(p_1, p_2)$  for all states  $p_1$  and  $p_2$ :

$$r(p_1, p_2) := r^{(n+1)}(p_1, p_2).$$

This regular expression specifies all strings that take the DFA from the state  $p_1$  to the state  $p_2$  while using any state from the set  $Q_{n+1}$  in-between. Since we have

$$Q_{n+1} = \{q_0, \dots, q_n\} = Q$$

we can use any state in-between.

In order to construct a regular expression that specifies the language accepted by a deterministic DFA  $F$  we write the set  $A$  of accepting states of  $F$  as

$$A = \{t_1, \dots, t_m\}.$$

Then the regular expression  $r(A)$  is defined as

$$r(A) := r(q_0, t_1) + \cdots + r(q_0, t_m).$$

This regular expression specifies those strings that take the DFA  $F$  from its start state  $q_0$  into any of its accepting states.  $\square$

**Exercise 9:** Take the DFA shown in Figure 4.2 and construct an equivalent regular expression.

**Solution:** The DFA has two states: 0 and 1. We start by computing the regular expressions  $r^{(k)}(i, j)$  for all  $i, j \in \{0, 1\}$  for  $k = 0, 1$ , and 2:

1. For  $k = 0$  we have:

- (a)  $r^{(0)}(0, 0) = a + \varepsilon$ ,
- (b)  $r^{(0)}(0, 1) = b$ ,

- (c)  $r^{(0)}(1, 0) = \emptyset$ ,  
 (d)  $r^{(0)}(1, 1) = a + \varepsilon$ .

2. For  $k = 1$  we have:

- (a) For  $r^{(1)}(0, 0)$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned} r^{(1)}(0, 0) &= r^{(0)}(0, 0) + r^{(0)}(0, 0) \cdot (r^{(0)}(0, 0))^* \cdot r^{(0)}(0, 0) \\ &\doteq r^{(0)}(0, 0) \cdot (r^{(0)}(0, 0))^* \end{aligned}$$

In the last step we used the fact that

$$\begin{aligned} r + r \cdot r^* \cdot r &\doteq r \cdot (\varepsilon + r^* \cdot r) \\ &\doteq r \cdot r^* \end{aligned}$$

to simplify the result. If we substitute for  $r^{(0)}(0, 0)$  the expression  $a + \varepsilon$  we get

$$r^{(1)}(0, 0) \doteq (a + \varepsilon) \cdot (a + \varepsilon)^*.$$

As we have  $(a + \varepsilon) \cdot (a + \varepsilon)^* \doteq a^*$  we have

$$r^{(1)}(0, 0) \doteq a^*.$$

- (b) For  $r^{(1)}(0, 1)$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned} r^{(1)}(0, 1) &\doteq r^{(0)}(0, 1) + r^{(0)}(0, 0) \cdot (r^{(0)}(0, 0))^* \cdot r^{(0)}(0, 1) \\ &\doteq b + (a + \varepsilon) \cdot (a + \varepsilon)^* \cdot b \\ &\doteq b + a^* \cdot b \\ &\doteq (\varepsilon + a^*) \cdot b \\ &\doteq a^* \cdot b \end{aligned}$$

- (c) For  $r^{(1)}(1, 0)$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned} r^{(1)}(1, 0) &\doteq r^{(0)}(1, 0) + r^{(0)}(1, 0) \cdot (r^{(0)}(0, 0))^* \cdot r^{(0)}(0, 0) \\ &\doteq \emptyset + \emptyset \cdot (a + \varepsilon)^* \cdot (a + \varepsilon) \\ &\doteq \emptyset \end{aligned}$$

- (d) For  $r^{(1)}(1, 1)$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} r^{(1)}(1, 1) &\doteq r^{(0)}(1, 1) + r^{(0)}(1, 0) \cdot (r^{(0)}(0, 0))^* \cdot r^{(0)}(0, 1) \\ &\doteq (a + \varepsilon) + \emptyset \cdot (a + \varepsilon)^* \cdot b \\ &\doteq (a + \varepsilon) + \emptyset \\ &\doteq a + \varepsilon \end{aligned}$$

3. For  $k = 2$  we only have to compute the regular expression  $r^{(2)}(0, 1)$ :

$$\begin{aligned} r^{(2)}(0, 1) &\doteq r^{(1)}(0, 1) + r^{(1)}(0, 1) \cdot (r^{(1)}(1, 1))^* \cdot r^{(1)}(1, 1) \\ &\doteq a^* \cdot b + a^* \cdot b \cdot (a + \varepsilon)^* \cdot (a + \varepsilon) \\ &\doteq a^* \cdot b + a^* \cdot b \cdot a^* \\ &\doteq a^* \cdot b \cdot (\varepsilon + a^*) \\ &\doteq a^* \cdot b \cdot a^*. \end{aligned}$$

As the state  $\emptyset$  is the start state and the state  $1$  is the only accepting state we have

$$r(F) = r^{(2)}(0, 1) \doteq a^* \cdot b \cdot a^*.$$

□

**Exercise 10:** Take the DFA shown in Figure 4.13 on page 51 and construct a regular expression specifying the same language as this DFA.

**Hint:** In order to avoid unnecessary computations, you should only compute those regular expression  $r^{(k)}(p, q)$  that are needed in order to compute  $r^{(3)}(q_0, q_2)$ . ◇

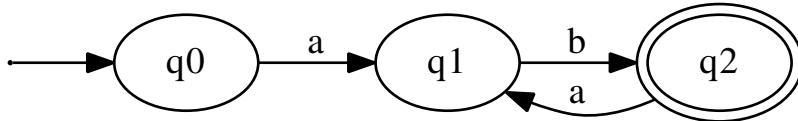


Figure 4.13: A deterministic finite state automaton.

#### 4.5.1 Implementation

The Jupyter notebook

<https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/../Python/Chapter-04-05/05-DFA-2-RegExp.ipynb>

contains a program that takes a DFA  $F$  and computes a regular expression  $r$  such that  $r$  specifies the language accepted by  $F$ , i.e. we have  $L(r) = L(F)$ .

## 4.6 Minimization of Finite State Automatons

In this section we show how to minimize the number of states of a DFA

$$F = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle.$$

Without loss of generality we want to assume that the DFA  $F$  is complete: Therefore, we assume that for each state  $q \in Q$  and each letter  $c \in \Sigma$  the expression  $\delta(q, c)$  returns a state of  $Q$ . Our goal is to find a DFA

$$\text{Min}(F) := \langle Q_\sim, \Sigma, \Delta, [q_0]_\sim, \hat{A} \rangle$$

which accepts the same language as  $F$ , so we have

$$L(\text{Min}(F)) = L(F)$$

and for which the number of states of the set  $Q_\sim$  is minimal. You might be wondering about the meaning associated with  $Q_\sim$  and  $[q_0]_\sim$ : We will introduce an equivalence relation  $\sim$  on the set of states  $Q$ . Basically,  $p_1, p_2 \in Q$  are equivalent if they serve the same purpose in the DFA  $F$ , whatever that means. If  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  are equivalent, this will be written as

$$p_1 \sim p_2.$$

Given a state  $p \in Q$ , the equivalence class of  $p$  w.r.t. the relation  $\sim$ , written  $[p]_\sim$  is the set of all states that are equivalent to  $p$ , i.e. we have

$$[p]_\sim := \{q \in Q \mid p \sim q\}.$$

The new states of the DFA  $\text{Min}(F)$  will be equivalence classes of the equivalence relation  $\sim$ . Therefore

we have

$$Q_{\sim} := \{[q]_{\sim} \mid q \in Q\}.$$

The new start state  $[q_0]_{\sim}$  is the set of all states that are equivalent to the state  $q_0$ . The formal definitions of the equivalence relation  $\sim$ , the function  $\Delta : Q_{\sim} \times \Sigma \rightarrow Q_{\sim}$  and the set  $\hat{A}$  will be given later.

We start with the function

$$\delta^* : Q \times \Sigma^* \rightarrow Q$$

which extends the function  $\delta$  by accepting a string instead of a single character as its first argument. The function call  $\delta^*(q, s)$  calculates the state  $p$  which the DFA  $F$  enters if it reads the string  $s$  in the state  $q$ . As we have assumed the DFA  $F$  to be complete, we have that

$$\delta(q, c) \notin \Omega \quad \text{for all } q \in Q \text{ and all } c \in \Sigma$$

and then  $\delta^*(q, w)$  is defined by induction on  $w$  as follows:

- (a)  $\delta^*(q, \lambda) := q \quad \text{for all } q \in Q.$
- (b)  $\delta^*(q, cw) := \delta^*(\delta(q, c), v) \quad \text{for all } q \in Q, c \in \Sigma, \text{ and } v \in \Sigma^*.$

Obviously, in a finite state automaton  $F = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle$  we can remove all the states  $p \in Q$  which are not **reachable** from the start state. A state  $p$  is **reachable** iff a string  $w \in \Sigma^*$  is given, such that

$$\delta^*(q_0, w) = p$$

holds. It is clear that an unreachable state is useless. Therefore, w.l.o.g. we assume in the following that all states of the DFA  $F = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle$  are reachable.

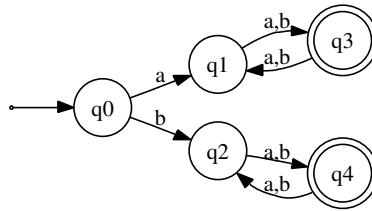


Figure 4.14: A finite state automaton with equivalent states.

In general, we can minimize a DFA by identifying certain states. If we look for example at the DFA shown in figure 4.14, we can identify the states  $q_1$  and  $q_2$  as well as  $q_3$  and  $q_4$  without changing the language of the DFA. The central idea in minimizing a DFA is that we compute those states which **must not** be identified and consider all other states as equivalent. States that must not be identified are called **separable states**. This notion is defined next.

**Definition 13 (Separable States)** Assume  $F = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle$  is a DFA. Two states  $p_1, p_2 \in Q$  are called **separable** if and only if there exists a string  $s \in \Sigma^*$  such that either

1.  $\delta^*(p_1, s) \in A$  and  $\delta^*(p_2, s) \notin A$  or
2.  $\delta^*(p_1, s) \notin A$  and  $\delta^*(p_2, s) \in A$

holds. In this case, the string  $s$  separates the states  $p_1$  and  $p_2$ .  $\square$

If two states  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  are separable, then these states must not be identified since doing so would change the language that is accepted. We define an equivalence relation  $\sim$  on the set  $Q$  of all states by setting

$$p_1 \sim p_2 \quad \text{iff} \quad \forall s \in \Sigma^* : (\delta(p_1, s) \in A \leftrightarrow \delta(p_2, s) \in A).$$

Hence, two states  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  are considered to be equivalent iff they are not separable. The claim is that we can identify all pairs  $\langle p_1, p_2 \rangle$  of equivalent states.

The question remains how we can determine which states are separable. One possibility is to create a set  $V$  with pairs of states. We add the pair  $\langle p, q \rangle$  to the set  $V$  if we have discovered that  $p$  and  $q$  are separable. We recognize  $p$  and  $q$  as separable if there is a letter  $c \in \Sigma$  and two states  $s$  and  $t$  that are already known to be separable such that

$$\delta(p, c) = s, \quad \delta(q, c) = t, \quad \text{and} \quad \langle s, t \rangle \in V$$

holds. Formally, we define a sequence  $(V_k)_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$  of sets of pairs of separable states by induction.

I.A.:  $k = 0$

Since an accepting state can never be equivalent to a non-accepting state we define

$$V_0 := (A \times (Q \setminus A)) \cup ((Q \setminus A) \times A).$$

Therefore, initially only the accepting states are separable from the states that are not accepting.

I.S.:  $k \mapsto k + 1$

If we have a pair  $\langle p, q \rangle \in Q \times Q$  and a letter  $c$  such that the pair of states  $\langle \delta(p, c), \delta(q, c) \rangle$  is already separable, then  $\langle p, q \rangle$  is separable, too. Therefore we define:

$$V_{k+1} := V_k \cup \{ \langle p, q \rangle \mid \exists c \in \Sigma : \langle \delta(p, c), \delta(q, c) \rangle \in V_k \}$$

The sequence  $(V_k)_{k \in \mathbb{N}}$  is monotonically increasing, i.e. we have

$$V_k \subseteq V_{k+1}.$$

Since  $V_k \subseteq Q \times Q$  and the set  $Q \times Q$  is finite, there must be a  $K \in \mathbb{N}$  such that

$$V_{K+1} = V_K.$$

We can therefore define two states  $p$  and  $q$  to be equivalent iff  $\langle p, q \rangle \notin V_K$ :

$$p \sim q \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} \langle p, q \rangle \notin V_K.$$

Next, for a state  $p \in Q$  we define the equivalence class of  $p$  as the set

$$[p]_\sim := \{q \in Q \mid p \sim q\}.$$

We define the set  $\mathcal{Q}_\sim$  of all equivalence classes as

$$\mathcal{Q}_\sim := \{[q]_\sim \mid q \in Q\}.$$

Next, we define the function  $\Delta : \mathcal{Q}_\sim \times \Sigma \rightarrow \mathcal{Q}_\sim$  as follows:

$$\Delta([q]_\sim, c) := [\delta(q, c)]_\sim.$$

Finally, we define the set of accepting equivalence classes  $\widehat{A}$  as

$$\widehat{A} := \{[q]_\sim \mid q \in A\}.$$

Then, the DFA

$$\text{Min}(F) := \langle \mathcal{Q}_{\sim}, \Sigma, \Delta, [q_0]_{\sim}, \hat{A} \rangle$$

is the minimal complete DFA that accepts the same language as the DFA  $F$ .

**Exercise 11:** We consider the DFA shown in figure 4.14 and apply the algorithm described above to this DFA. We use a table for this. The columns and rows of this table are numbered with the different states. If we have recognized in the first step that the states  $i$  and  $j$  are separable, we insert a 1 in this table in the  $i$ -th row and the  $j$ -th column. Furthermore, since the states  $i$  and  $j$  can also be distinguished from the states  $j$  and  $i$ , we also insert a 1 in the  $j$ -th row and the  $i$ -th column.

1. In the first step we recognize that the two accepting states  $q_3$  and  $q_4$  are separable from all non-accepting states. Therefore the pairs  $\langle q_0, q_3 \rangle$ ,  $\langle q_0, q_4 \rangle$ ,  $\langle q_1, q_3 \rangle$ ,  $\langle q_1, q_4 \rangle$ ,  $\langle q_2, q_3 \rangle$  and  $\langle q_2, q_4 \rangle$  are separable. Hence the table now has the following configuration:

	$q_0$	$q_1$	$q_2$	$q_3$	$q_4$
$q_0$				1	1
$q_1$				1	1
$q_2$				1	1
$q_3$	1	1	1		
$q_4$	1	1	1		

2. Next we see that the states  $q_0$  and  $q_1$  are separable because

$$\delta(q_0, a) = q_1, \quad \delta(q_1, a) = q_3 \quad \text{and} \quad q_1 \not\sim q_3.$$

Also we see that the states  $q_0$  and  $q_2$  are separable, because

$$\delta(q_0, b) = q_2, \quad \delta(q_2, b) = q_4 \quad \text{and} \quad q_2 \not\sim q_4.$$

Since we have found in the second step that  $q_0 \not\sim q_1$  and  $q_0 \not\sim q_2$  holds true, we will insert a 2 at the corresponding positions in the table. Therefore the table now has the following form:

	$q_0$	$q_1$	$q_2$	$q_3$	$q_4$
$q_0$		2	2	1	1
$q_1$	2			1	1
$q_2$	2			1	1
$q_3$	1	1	1		
$q_4$	1	1	1		

3. Now we do not find any more pairs of separable states, because if we take a look at the pair  $\langle q_1, q_2 \rangle$  we can see that

$$\delta(q_1, a) = q_3 \quad \text{and} \quad \delta(q_2, a) = q_4,$$

but because the states  $q_3$  and  $q_4$  are not separable so far, this does not yield a new separable pair. Neither does

$$\delta(q_1, b) = q_3 \quad \text{and} \quad \delta(q_2, b) = q_4$$

yield a new separable pair. At this point, the two states  $q_3$  and  $q_4$  remain. We find

$$\delta(q_3, c) = q_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \delta(q_4, c) = q_2 \quad \text{for all } c \in \{a, b\}$$

and because the states  $q_1$  and  $q_2$  are not yet known to be separable, we have not found any new separable states. So we can read the equivalent states from the table, it holds that:

- (a)  $q_1 \sim q_2$
- (b)  $q_3 \sim q_4$

Figure 4.15 shows the corresponding reduced finite DFA.



Figure 4.15: The reduced DFA.

**Exercise 12:** Construct the minimal DFA that recognizes the language  $L(a \cdot (b \cdot a)^*)$ . Perform the following steps:

- (a) Construct an NFA which recognizes this language.
- (b) Transform this NFA into a DFA.
- (c) Minimize the number of states of this DFA with the algorithm given above.

#### 4.6.1 Implementation

The *Jupyter notebook*

<https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/../Python/Chapter-04-05/07-Minimize.ipynb>

contains a program that takes a DFA  $F$  and returns an equivalent DFA that has the minimum number of states.

## 4.7 Conclusion

In this chapter we have shown that the concept of a [finite automaton](#) and the concept of a [regular expression](#) are equivalent in their ability to describe formal languages.

- (a) Every DFA can be translated into an equivalent regular expression.
- (b) Every regular expression can be translated into an equivalent NFA.
- (c) Every NFA can be transformed into an equivalent DFA.

Furthermore, we have shown that every DFA can be minimized.

**Historical Remark** Stephen Cole Kleene (1909 – 1994) has shown in 1956 that the concepts of [finite state automata](#) and [regular expression](#) have the same strength [[Kle56](#)].

## 4.8 Check your Understanding

- (a) How are DFAs and NFAs defined?
- (b) Given an NFA  $F$ , can you convert it into an equivalent DFA  $\text{det}(F)$  that accepts the same language as the NFA  $F$ ?
- (c) Given a regular expression  $r$ , can you describe the steps necessary to construct an NFA  $F$  that accepts the language specified by  $r$ ?
- (d) Given a DFA  $F$  can you describe how to construct a regular expression  $r$  that specifies the language accepted by  $F$ ?
- (e) How do we minimize a DFA?

## Chapter 5

# The Theory of Regular Languages

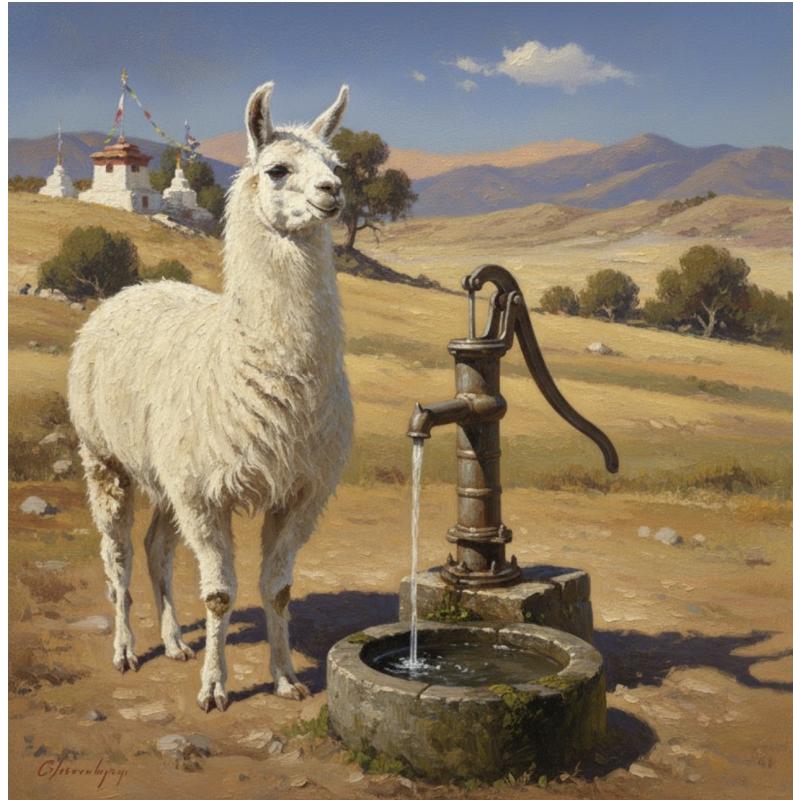


Figure 5.1: A pumping lama.

A formal language  $L \subseteq \Sigma^*$  is called a [regular language](#) if there is a regular expression  $r$  such that the language  $L$  is specified by  $r$ , i.e. if

$$L = L(r)$$

holds. In Chapter 4 we have shown that the regular languages are those languages that are recognized by a finite automaton. In this chapter, we show that the class of regular languages has certain [closure properties](#):

- (a) The [union](#)  $L_1 \cup L_2$  of two regular languages  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  is a regular language, too.

(b) The **intersection**  $L_1 \cap L_2$  of two regular languages  $L_1$  und  $L_2$  is again a regular language.

(c) The **complement**  $\Sigma^* \setminus L$  of a regular language  $L$  is also a regular language.

As an application of these closure properties we will then show how it is possible to decide whether two regular expressions are **equivalent**, i.e. we present an algorithm that takes two regular expressions  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  as input and checks, whether

$$r_1 \doteq r_2$$

holds. After that, we discuss the **limits** of regular languages. To this end, we prove the **pumping lemma**. Using the pumping lemma we will be able to show that, for example, the language

$$\{a^n b^n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$$

is not regular. To summarize, this chapter

- discusses closure properties of regular languages,
- presents an algorithm for checking the equivalence of regular expressions, and
- shows that certain languages are not regular.

## 5.1 Closure Properties of Regular Languages

In this section we show that regular languages are closed under the Boolean operations of **union**, **intersection** and **complement**. We start with the union.

**Proposition 14** If  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are regular languages, then the union of the sets  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ , which is the set  $L_1 \cup L_2$ , is a regular language, too.

**Proof:** As  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are regular languages, there exist regular expressions  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  such that

$$L_1 = L(r_1) \quad \text{and} \quad L_2 = L(r_2)$$

holds. We define  $r := r_1 + r_2$ . Then we have

$$L(r) = L(r_1 + r_2) = L(r_1) \cup L(r_2) = L_1 \cup L_2.$$

Since  $L_1 \cup L_2$  is the language that is generated by the regular expression  $r_1 + r_2$ , it is a regular language. □

**Proposition 15** If  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are regular languages, then the intersection of the sets  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ , which is the set  $L_1 \cap L_2$ , is a regular language, too.

**Proof:** While the proof of Proposition 14 follows directly from the definition of regular expressions, we have to do a little more work here. In the previous chapter we saw that for every regular expression  $r$  there is an equivalent DFA  $F$ , which accepts the language specified by  $r$ , and we can also assume that this DFA is complete. Let  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  be the regular expressions that define the languages  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ , i.e. we have

$$L_1 = L(r_1) \quad \text{und} \quad L_2 = L(r_2).$$

First, we construct two complete DFAs  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  that accept these languages, i.e. such that we have

$$L(F_1) = L_1(r_1) \quad \text{and} \quad L(F_2) = L_2(r_2).$$

Our goal is to construct a DFA  $F$  such that  $F$  accepts the language  $L_1 \cap L_2$  and nothing else. As every DFA can be converted into an equivalent regular expression we will then have shown that the language  $L_1 \cap L_2$  is regular. We will use the DFAs  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  to construct  $F$ . Assume that

$$F_1 = \langle Q_1, \Sigma, \delta_1, q_1, A_1 \rangle \quad \text{and} \quad F_2 = \langle Q_2, \Sigma, \delta_2, q_2, A_2 \rangle$$

holds. We define  $F$  as follows:

$$F := \langle Q_1 \times Q_2, \Sigma, \delta, \langle q_1, q_2 \rangle, A_1 \times A_2 \rangle,$$

where the state transition function

$$\delta : (Q_1 \times Q_2) \times \Sigma \rightarrow Q_1 \times Q_2$$

is defined as

$$\delta(\langle p_1, p_2 \rangle, c) := \langle \delta_1(p_1, c), \delta_2(p_2, c) \rangle.$$

Effectively, the DFA  $F$  runs the DFAs  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  in parallel. In order to do so, the states of  $F$  are pairs of the form  $\langle p_1, p_2 \rangle$  where  $p_1$  is a state from  $F_1$  and  $p_2$  is a state from  $F_2$  and the transition function  $\delta$  computes the state  $\langle \delta_1(p_1, c), \delta_2(p_2, c) \rangle$  by simultaneously computing the next states of  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  in the DFAs  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  when these DFAs read the character  $c$ . A string  $s$  is accepted by  $F$  if and only if both  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  accept  $s$ . Therefore, the set  $A$  of accepting states of the DFA  $F$  is defined as:

$$A := \{ \langle p_1, p_2 \rangle \in Q_1 \times Q_2 \mid p_1 \in A_1 \wedge p_2 \in A_2 \} = A_1 \times A_2.$$

Then for all  $s \in \Sigma^*$  we have:

$$\begin{aligned} s &\in L(F) \\ \Leftrightarrow \delta(\langle q_1, q_2 \rangle, s) &\in A \\ \Leftrightarrow \langle \delta_1(q_1, s), \delta_2(q_2, s) \rangle &\in A_1 \times A_2 \\ \Leftrightarrow \delta_1(q_1, s) \in A_1 \wedge \delta_2(q_2, s) &\in A_2 \\ \Leftrightarrow s &\in L(F_1) \wedge s \in L(F_2) \\ \Leftrightarrow s &\in L(F_1) \cap L(F_2) \\ \Leftrightarrow s &\in L_1 \cap L_2 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore we have shown that

$$L(F) = L_1 \cap L_2$$

and this completes the proof. □

**Remark:** In principle it would be possible to define a function

$$\wedge : \text{RegExp} \times \text{RegExp} \rightarrow \text{RegExp}$$

that takes two regular expressions  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  and returns a regular expression  $r_1 \wedge r_2$  such that we have

$$L(r_1 \wedge r_2) = L(r_1) \cap L(r_2).$$

To compute  $r_1 \wedge r_2$  we would first compute NFAs  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  such that

$$L(F_1) = L(r_1) \quad \text{and} \quad L(F_2) = L(r_2)$$

holds. Then we would transform the NFAs  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  into equivalent DFAs  $\det(F_1)$  and  $\det(F_2)$ . After that, we would build the extended Cartesian product of  $\det(F_1)$  and  $\det(F_2)$  as shown above. Finally,

we would convert the DFA  $\det(F_1) \times \det(F_2)$  into an equivalent regular expression. However, most of the time the resulting regular expression would be absurdly large. Therefore, it is not practical to implement the function  $\wedge$ .  $\diamond$

**Proposition 16** If  $L$  is a regular language with the alphabet  $\Sigma$ , then the complement of  $L$ , which is defined as the language  $\Sigma^* \setminus L$ , is regular.

**Proof:** We assume that  $r$  is a regular expression describing the language  $L$ , i.e.  $L = L(r)$ . We construct an NFA  $F$  such that  $L(F) = L(r) = L$ . We transform this NFA into the DFA  $\det(F)$  as discussed in the previous chapter and note that this DFA is complete. Assume that we then have

$$\det(F) = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle.$$

We define the DFA  $\overline{\det(F)}$  as follows:

$$\overline{\det(F)} = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, Q \setminus A \rangle.$$

i.e. the set of accepting states of  $\overline{\det(F)}$  is the complement of the set of accepting states of  $\det(F)$ . Then we have

$$\begin{aligned} w &\in L(\overline{\det(F)}) \\ \Leftrightarrow \delta^*(q_0, w) &\in Q \setminus A \\ \Leftrightarrow \delta^*(q_0, w) &\notin A \\ \Leftrightarrow w &\notin L(\det(F)) \\ \Leftrightarrow w &\notin L(F) \\ \Leftrightarrow w &\notin L(r) \\ \Leftrightarrow w &\notin L \\ \Leftrightarrow w &\in \Sigma^* \setminus L \end{aligned}$$

This shows that the language  $\Sigma^* \setminus L$  is accepted by the DFA  $\overline{\det(F)}$  and hence it is a regular language.  $\square$

**Corollary 17** If  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are regular languages over the common alphabet  $\Sigma$ , then the set difference  $L_1 \setminus L_2$  is a regular language.

**Proof:** A string  $w$  is a member of  $L_1 \setminus L_2$  iff  $w$  is a member of  $L_1$  and  $w$  is also a member of the complement of  $L_2$ . Therefore we have

$$L_1 \setminus L_2 = L_1 \cap (\Sigma^* \setminus L_2),$$

The previous proposition shows that for a regular language  $L_2$  the complement  $\Sigma^* \setminus L_2$  is also a regular language. Since the intersection of regular languages is regular, too, we see that  $L_1 \setminus L_2$  is also regular.  $\square$

In summary, we have demonstrated that regular languages are closed under the operations of Boolean algebra on sets.

**Exercise 13:** Let  $\Sigma$  be a given alphabet. For a string  $s = c_1c_2 \dots c_{n-1}c_n \in \Sigma^*$ , the **reversal** of  $s$  is denoted by  $s^R$  and is defined as follows:

$$s^R := c_nc_{n-1} \dots c_2c_1$$

For instance, if  $s = abc$ , then  $s^R = cba$ . The reversal  $L^R$  of a language  $L \subseteq \Sigma^*$  is formally defined as:

$$L^R := \{s^R \mid s \in L\}$$

Assume that the language  $L \subseteq \Sigma^*$  is regular. Prove that  $L^R$  is also a regular language.

**Hint:** You may use the following equations in your proof:

(a) If  $L_1, L_2 \subseteq \Sigma^*$ , then

$$(L_1 \cdot L_2)^R = L_2^R \cdot L_1^R.$$

(b) If  $L_1 \subseteq \Sigma^*$ , then

$$(L_1^*)^R = (L_1^R)^*.$$

◊

## 5.2 Recognizing Empty Languages

In this section we develop an algorithm that takes a DFA

$$F = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle$$

as its input and then checks, whether the language accepted by  $F$  is empty, i.e. it checks whether  $L(F) = \{\}$ . To this end we interpret  $F$  as a directed graph. The nodes of this graph are the states of the set  $Q$  and for two states  $q_1$  and  $q_2$  there is an edge  $q_1$  from to  $q_2$  iff there exists a character  $c \in \Sigma$ , such that  $\delta(q_1, c) = q_2$ . The language  $L(F)$  is empty if and only if this graph has no path that starts in the state  $q_0$  and leads to an accepting state.

Therefore, in order to answer the question whether  $L(F) = \{\}$  holds, we have to compute the set  $R$  of all those states that are **reachable** from the start state  $q_0$ . The computation of the set  $R$  of all reachable states can be done iteratively as follows:

1.  $q_0 \in R$ , because the start state is obviously reachable from the start state.

2.  $p_1 \in R \wedge \delta(p_1, c) = p_2 \rightarrow p_2 \in R$ ,

because if  $p_1$  is reachable from  $q_0$  and there is a transition from  $p_1$  to  $p_2$  while reading a character  $c$ , then  $p_2$  is reachable from  $q_0$ .

This last step is repeated until there are no more states that can be added to the set  $R$ .

Then we have  $L(F) = \{\}$  if and only if none of the accepting states is reachable, i.e. we have

$$L(F) = \{\} \Leftrightarrow R \cap A = \{\}.$$

Hence we now have an algorithm for checking whether  $L(F) = \{\}$  holds: We compute the states that are reachable from the start state  $q_0$  and then we check whether this set contains any accepting states.

**Remark:** If the regular language  $L$  is not specified by DFA  $F$ , but rather is defined by a regular expression  $r$ , then there is a simple recursive algorithm for checking whether  $L(r)$  is empty:

- (a)  $L(\emptyset) = \{\}.$
- (b)  $L(\varepsilon) \neq \{\}.$
- (c)  $L(c) \neq \{\} \quad \text{for all } c \in \Sigma.$
- (d)  $L(r_1 \cdot r_2) = \{\} \Leftrightarrow L(r_1) = \{\} \vee L(r_2) = \{\}.$
- (e)  $L(r_1 + r_2) = \{\} \Leftrightarrow L(r_1) = \{\} \wedge L(r_2) = \{\}.$
- (f)  $L(r^*) \neq \{\}.$

◊

## 5.3 Equivalence of Regular Expressions

In Chapter 2 we had defined two regular expressions  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  to be **equivalent** (written  $r_1 \doteq r_2$ ), if the languages specified by  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  are identical:

$$r_1 \doteq r_2 \stackrel{\text{def}}{\iff} L(r_1) = L(r_2).$$

In this section, we present an algorithm that takes two regular expressions  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  as input and then checks whether  $r_1 \doteq r_2$  holds.

**Theorem 18** If  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  are regular expressions, then the question whether  $r_1 \doteq r_2$  holds is decidable.

**Proof:** We present an algorithm that decides whether  $L(r_1) = L(r_2)$  holds. First, we observe that the sets  $L(r_1)$  and  $L(r_2)$  are identical iff the set differences  $L(r_2) \setminus L(r_1)$  and  $L(r_1) \setminus L(r_2)$  are both empty:

$$\begin{aligned} L(r_1) = L(r_2) &\Leftrightarrow L(r_1) \subseteq L(r_2) \wedge L(r_2) \subseteq L(r_1) \\ &\Leftrightarrow L(r_1) \setminus L(r_2) = \{\} \wedge L(r_2) \setminus L(r_1) = \{\} \end{aligned}$$

Next, assume that  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  are DFAs such that

$$L(F_1) = L(r_1) \quad \text{and} \quad L(F_2) = L(r_2)$$

holds. We have seen in Chapter 4 how  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  can be constructed from  $r_1$  and  $r_2$ . According to the corollary 17 the languages  $L(r_1) \setminus L(r_2)$  and  $L(r_2) \setminus L(r_1)$  are regular and we have seen how to construct DFAs  $F_{1,2}$  and  $F_{2,1}$  such that

$$L(r_1) \setminus L(r_2) = L(F_{1,2}) \quad \text{and} \quad L(r_2) \setminus L(r_1) = L(F_{2,1})$$

holds. Hence we have

$$r_1 \doteq r_2 \Leftrightarrow L(F_{1,2}) = \{\} \wedge L(F_{2,1}) = \{\}$$

and according to Section 5.2 this question is decidable by checking whether any of the accepting states of  $F_{1,2}$  or  $F_{2,1}$  are reachable from the start state. □

**Remark:** The Jupyter notebook `Equivalence.ipynb`, which is available at

<https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/Python/Chapter-04-05/09-Equivalence.ipynb> implements this algorithm.

## 5.4 Limits of Regular Languages

In this section we present a theorem that can be used to show that certain languages are not regular. This theorem is known as the [pumping lemma for regular languages](#).

**Theorem 19 (Pumping Lemma for Regular Languages, Michael Rabin and Dana Scott 1959, [RS59])**

Assume  $L$  is a regular language. Then there exists a natural number  $n \in \mathbb{N}$  such that every string  $s \in L$  that has a length of at least  $n$  can be split into three substrings  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$  such that the following holds:

1.  $s = uvw$ ,
2.  $v \neq \lambda$ ,
3.  $|uv| \leq n$ ,
4.  $\forall h \in \mathbb{N} : uv^h w \in L$ .

This theorem can be written as a single formula: If  $L$  is a regular language, then

$$\exists n \in \mathbb{N} : \forall s \in L : (|s| \geq n \rightarrow \exists u, v, w \in \Sigma^* : s = uvw \wedge v \neq \lambda \wedge |uv| \leq n \wedge \forall h \in \mathbb{N} : uv^h w \in L).$$

**Proof:** As  $L$  is a regular language, there exists a DFA

$$F = \langle Q, \Sigma, \delta, q_0, A \rangle,$$

such that  $L = L(F)$ . The number  $n$  whose existence is claimed in the Pumping Lemma is defined as the number of states of  $F$ :

$$n := \text{card}(Q).$$

Next, assume a string  $s \in L$  is given such that  $|s| \geq n$ . Define  $m := |s|$ . Then there are  $m$  characters  $c_i$  such that

$$s = c_1 c_2 \cdots c_m.$$

Since  $|s| \geq n$ , we have  $m \geq n$ . On reading the characters  $c_i$  the DFA changes its states as follows:

$$q_0 \xrightarrow{c_1} q_1 \xrightarrow{c_2} q_2 \xrightarrow{c_3} \cdots \xrightarrow{c_m} q_m,$$

i.e. on reading the character  $c_{i+1}$  in the state  $q_i$  the DFA switches into the state  $q_{i+1}$  for all  $i = 0, \dots, m-1$ . Since we have  $s \in L$  we conclude that  $q_m$  must be an accepting state, i.e.  $q_m \in A$ . As  $m \geq n$  and  $n$  is the total number of states of  $F$ , not all of the states

$$q_0, q_1, q_2, \dots, q_m$$

can be different. Because of

$$\text{card}(\{0, 1, \dots, n\}) = n + 1$$

we know, that even in the list

$$[q_0, q_1, q_2, \dots, q_n]$$

at least one state has to occur at least twice. Hence there are natural numbers  $k, l \in \{0, \dots, n\}$  such that

$$q_k = q_l \wedge k < l.$$

Next, we define the strings  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$  as follows:

$$u := c_1 \cdots c_k, \quad v := c_{k+1} \cdots c_l, \quad \text{and} \quad w := c_{l+1} \cdots c_m.$$

As  $k < l$  we have that  $v \neq \lambda$  and  $l \leq n$  implies  $|uv| \leq n$ . Furthermore, we have the following:

1. Reading the string  $u$  changes the state of the DFA  $F$  from the start state  $q_0$  to the state  $q_k$ , we have

$$q_0 \xrightarrow{u} q_k. \quad (5.1)$$

2. Reading the string  $v$  changes the state of the DFA  $F$  from the state  $q_k$  to the state  $q_l$ . As we have  $q_l = q_k$ , this implies

$$q_k \xrightarrow{v} q_k. \quad (5.2)$$

3. Reading the string  $w$  changes the state of the DFA  $F$  from the state  $q_l = q_k$  to the accepting state  $q_m$ :

$$q_k \xrightarrow{w} q_m. \quad (5.3)$$

From  $q_k \xrightarrow{v} q_k$  we conclude

$$q_k \xrightarrow{v} q_k \xrightarrow{v} q_k, \quad \text{hence} \quad q_k \xrightarrow{v^2} q_k.$$

As we can repeat reading  $v$  in state  $q_k$  any number of times, we have

$$q_k \xrightarrow{v^h} q_k \quad \text{for all } h \in \mathbb{N}. \quad (5.4)$$

Combining the equations (5.1), (5.3), and (5.4) we have

$$q_0 \xrightarrow{u} q_k \xrightarrow{v^h} q_k \xrightarrow{w} q_m.$$

This can be condensed to

$$q_0 \xrightarrow{uv^hw} q_m$$

and since the state  $q_m$  is an accepting state we conclude that  $uv^hw \in L$  holds for any  $h \in \mathbb{N}$ .

Figure 5.2 shows the gist of the proof.  $\square$

**Proposition 20** The alphabet  $\Sigma$  is defined as  $\Sigma = \{ \text{"a"}, \text{"b"} \}$ . Define the language  $L$  as the set of all strings of the form  $a^k b^k$  where  $k$  is some natural number:

$$L = \{ a^k b^k \mid k \in \mathbb{N} \}.$$

Then the language  $L$  is not regular.

**Proof:** This is a proof by contradiction. We assume that  $L$  is a regular language. According to the Pumping Lemma there exists a fixed natural number  $n > 0$  such that every  $s \in L$  that satisfies  $|s| \geq n$  can be written as

$$s = uvw$$



Figure 5.2: The construction of the Pumping Lemma.

where, furthermore, we have that

$$|uv| \leq n, \quad v \neq \lambda, \quad \text{and} \quad \forall h \in \mathbb{N} : uv^h w \in L$$

holds. Let us define the string  $s$  as

$$s := a^n b^n.$$

Obviously we have  $|s| = 2 \cdot n \geq n$ . Hence there are strings  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$  such that

$$a^n b^n = uvw, \quad |uv| \leq n, \quad v \neq \lambda, \quad \text{and} \quad \forall h \in \mathbb{N} : uv^h w \in L.$$

As  $|uv| \leq n$ , the string  $uv$  is a prefix not only of  $s$  but even of  $a^n$ . Therefore, and since  $v \neq \lambda$  we know that the string  $v$  must have the form

$$v = a^k \quad \text{for some } k \in \mathbb{N} \text{ such that } k > 0.$$

If we take the formula  $\forall h \in \mathbb{N} : uv^h w \in L$  and set  $h := 0$ , we conclude that

$$uw \in L. \tag{5.5}$$

In order to facilitate our argument, we define the function

$$\text{count} : \Sigma^* \times \Sigma \rightarrow \mathbb{N}.$$

Given a string  $t$  and a character  $c$  the function  $\text{count}(t, c)$  counts how often the character  $c$  occurs in the string  $t$ . For the language  $L$  we have

$$t \in L \Rightarrow \text{count}(t, 'a') = \text{count}(t, 'b').$$

On one hand we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{count}(uw, 'a') &= \text{count}(uvw, 'a') - \text{count}(v, 'a') \\ &= \text{count}(s, 'a') - \text{count}(v, 'a') \\ &= \text{count}(a^n b^n, 'a') - \text{count}(a^k, 'a') \\ &= n - k \\ &< n \end{aligned}$$

But on the other hand we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{count}(uw, 'b') &= \text{count}(uvw, 'b') - \text{count}(v, 'b') \\
 &= \text{count}(s, 'b') - \text{count}(v, 'b') \\
 &= \text{count}(a^n b^n, 'b') - \text{count}(a^k, 'b') \\
 &= n - 0 \\
 &= n
 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, we have

$$\text{count}(uw, 'a') < \text{count}(uw, 'b')$$

and this shows that the string  $uw$  is not a member of the language  $L$  because for all strings in  $L$  the number of occurrences of the character "a" is the same as the number of occurrences of the character "b". This contradiction shows that the language  $L$  cannot be regular.  $\square$

**Exercise 14:** Let us define the language  $L$  as the set of all those strings that contain an equal number of occurrences of the characters "a" and "b":

$$L := \{w \in \{'a', 'b'\}^* \mid \text{count}(w, 'a') = \text{count}(w, 'b')\}$$

Prove that the language  $L$  is not regular.  $\diamond$

**Remark:** As the language  $L$  defined in the previous exercise is not regular we can conclude that regular expressions are unable to check even such simple questions as to whether the parentheses in an expression are balanced. Therefore, the concept of regular expressions is not strong enough to describe the syntax of a programming language. The next chapter introduces the notion of [context-free languages](#). These languages are powerful enough to describe modern programming languages.

**Exercise 15:** The language  $L_{\text{square}}$  is the set of all strings of the form  $a^n$  where  $n$  is a square, we have

$$L_{\text{square}} = \{a^m \mid \exists k \in \mathbb{N} : m = k^2\}$$

Prove that the language  $L_{\text{square}}$  is not a regular language.  $\diamond$

**Solution:** The proof is by contradiction. We begin by assuming that  $L_{\text{square}}$  is a regular language. According to the Pumping Lemma, there exists a natural number  $n > 0$  such that for any string  $s \in L_{\text{square}}$  with  $|s| \geq n$ , the string can be decomposed into three parts  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$  satisfying the following conditions:

1.  $s = uvw$ ,
2.  $|uv| \leq n$ ,
3.  $v \neq \lambda$ ,
4.  $\forall h \in \mathbb{N} : uv^h w \in L_{\text{square}}$ .

Let us define  $s := a^{n^2}$ . We have  $s \in L_{\text{square}}$  and we see that

$$|s| = |a^{n^2}| = n^2 \geq n.$$

Hence there have to be strings  $u$ ,  $v$  and  $w$  such that  $s = uvw$  and  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$  have the properties specified above. As 'a' is the only character that occurs in  $s$ , the strings  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$  also contain only this character. Hence there must be natural numbers  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  such that

$$u = a^x, v = a^y \text{ und } w = a^z$$

holds. Then we have the following.

(a) The partition  $s = uvw$  has the form  $a^{n^2} = a^x a^y a^z$  and hence we have

$$n^2 = x + y + z. \quad (5.6)$$

(b) The inequality  $|uv| \leq n$  implies  $x + y \leq n$ , which implies

$$y \leq n. \quad (5.7)$$

(c) From the condition  $v \neq \lambda$  we get

$$y > 0. \quad (5.8)$$

(d) The formula  $\forall h \in \mathbb{N} : uv^h w \in L_{\text{square}}$  implies

$$\forall h \in \mathbb{N} : a^x a^{y \cdot h} a^z \in L_{\text{square}}. \quad (5.9)$$

In particular, this must hold for  $h = 2$ :

$$a^x a^{y \cdot 2} a^z \in L_{\text{square}}.$$

According to the definition of  $L_{\text{square}}$  there is a natural number  $k$  such that

$$x + 2 \cdot y + z = k^2. \quad (5.10)$$

If we add  $y$  on both sides of equation (5.6) we get

$$n^2 + y = x + 2 \cdot y + z = k^2.$$

Because of  $y > 0$  this implies

$$n < k. \quad (5.11)$$

On the other hand we have

$$\begin{aligned} k^2 &= x + 2 \cdot y + z && \text{according to (5.10)} \\ &= x + y + z + y \\ &\leq x + y + z + n && \text{according to (5.7)} \\ &= n^2 + n && \text{according to (5.6)} \\ &< n^2 + 2 \cdot n + 1 && \text{since } n + 1 > 0 \\ &= (n + 1)^2 \end{aligned}$$

This shows that  $k^2 < (n + 1)^2$  holds and therefore we have

$$k < n + 1. \quad (5.12)$$

The inequalities (5.11) and (5.12) imply

$$n < k < n + 1.$$

Since  $k$  is a natural number and  $n$  is also a natural number this is a contradiction because there is no natural number between  $n$  and  $n + 1$ .  $\square$

**Exercise 16:** Define  $\Sigma := \{a\}$ . Prove that the language

$$L := \{a^p \mid p \text{ is a prime number}\}$$

is not regular.  $\diamond$

**Proof:** The proof is done by contradiction. Assume that  $L$  is regular. According to the Pumping Lemma there is a positive natural number  $n$  such that all strings  $s \in L$  that have a length of at least  $n$  can be written as

$$s = uvw$$

where, furthermore, the substrings  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$  have the following properties:

1.  $v \neq \lambda$ ,
2.  $|uv| \leq n$ , and
3.  $\forall h \in \mathbb{N} : uv^h w \in L$ .

Let us choose a prime number  $p$  such that  $p \geq n + 2$ . Since there are infinitely many prime numbers, this is always possible. Next, define  $s := a^p$ . Then we have  $|s| = p \geq n$  and we can use the Pumping Lemma to conclude that there must be substrings  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$  such that

$$a^p = uvw$$

holds. Hence the substrings  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$  can only contain the letter “a”. Therefore there exist natural numbers  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  such that

$$u = a^x, \quad v = a^y, \quad \text{and} \quad w = a^z.$$

We can conclude that  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  have the following properties:

1.  $x + y + z = p$ ,
2.  $y \neq 0$ ,
3.  $x + y \leq n$ ,
4.  $\forall h \in \mathbb{N} : x + h \cdot y + z \in \mathbb{P}$ .

Here,  $\mathbb{P}$  denotes the set of prime numbers.

If we choose to define  $h := x + z$  in the last formula, we get

$$x + (x + z) \cdot y + z \in \mathbb{P}.$$

Because of  $x + (x + z) \cdot y + z = (x + z) \cdot (1 + y)$  this leads to

$$(x + z) \cdot (1 + y) \in \mathbb{P}.$$

This is impossible. As  $y > 0$  we have  $1 + y \geq 2$  and because of  $x + y \leq n$ ,  $x + y + z = p$ , and  $p \geq n + 2$  it follows that  $z \geq 2$ . Therefore,  $x + z \geq 2$ . But then the product  $(x + z) \cdot (1 + y)$  is not a prime number and this contradiction shows that  $L$  can not be regular.  $\square$

**Exercise 17:** The language  $L_{\text{power}}$  is the set of all strings of the form  $a^n$  where  $n$  is a power of 2, i.e. we have

$$L_{\text{power}} = \{a^{2^k} \mid k \in \mathbb{N}\}$$

Prove that the language  $L_{\text{power}}$  is not regular.  $\diamond$

## 5.5 Check your Understanding

- (a) What are the closure properties of regular languages?
- (b) How can we check whether two regular expressions are equivalent?
- (c) Give the exact wording of the [Pumping Lemma](#).
- (d) Can you prove that the language

$$L := \{ w \in \{ 'a', 'b' \}^* \mid \text{count}(w, 'a') = \text{count}(w, 'b') \}$$

is not regular?

## Chapter 6

# Context-Free Languages

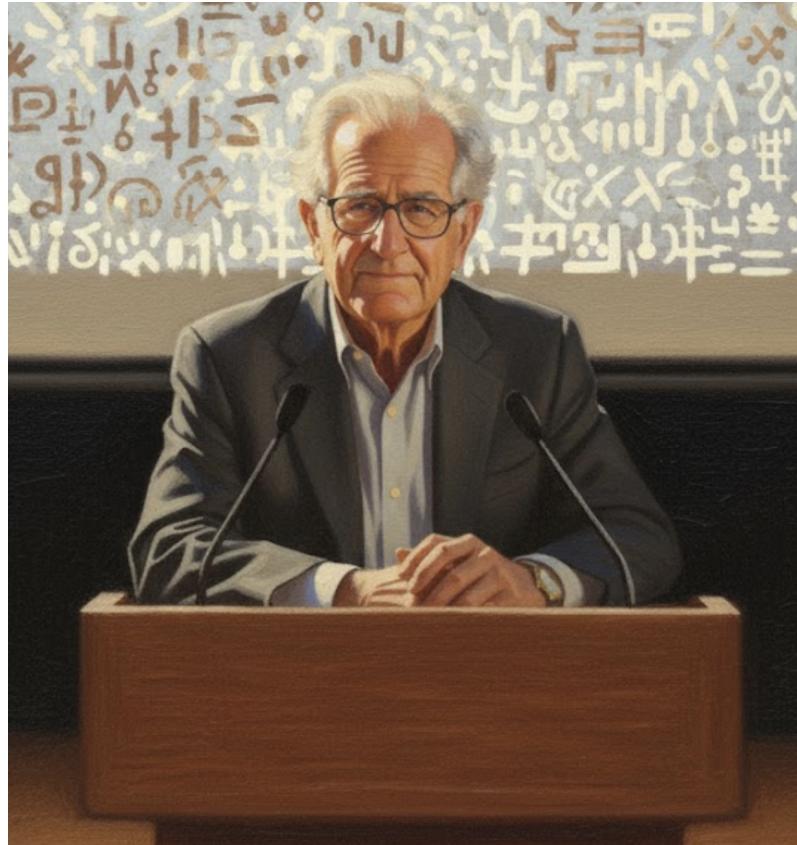


Figure 6.1: The father of context-free languages, Noam Chomsky.

In this chapter we present the notion of a [context-free language](#). This concept is much more powerful than the notion of a regular language. The syntax of most modern programming languages can be described by a context-free language. Furthermore, checking whether a string is a member of a context-free language structures the string into a recursive structure known as a [parse tree](#). These parse trees are the basis for understanding the meaning of a string that is to be interpreted as a program fragment. A program that checks whether a given string is an element of a context-free language is called a [parser](#). The task of a parser is to build a [parse tree](#) from a given string. Parsing

is therefore the first step in an interpreter or a compiler. In this chapter, we first define the notion of context-free languages. Next, we discuss parse trees. We conclude this chapter by introducing [top down parsing](#), which is one of the less complex algorithms that are available for parsing a string.

## 6.1 Context-Free Grammars

Context-free languages are used to describe programming languages. Context-free languages are formal languages like regular languages, but they are much more expressive than regular languages. When we process a program, we not only want decide whether the program is syntactically correct, but we also want to understand the *structure* of the program. The process of *structuring* is also referred to as [parsing](#) and the program that does this structuring is called a [parser](#). As input a parser usually does not receive the text of a program, but instead a sequence of so-called [terminals](#), which are also called [tokens](#). These tokens are generated by a scanner, which uses regular expressions to split the program text into single words, which we call tokens in this context.

The parser receives a sequence of tokens from the scanner and has the task of constructing a so-called [syntax tree](#). For this purpose the parser uses a grammar which specifies how the input is to be structured. As an example, consider parsing arithmetic expressions. We define the set *arithExpr* of arithmetic expressions inductively. In order to correctly represent the structure of arithmetic expressions, we define simultaneously the sets *Product* and *Factor*. The set *Product* encompasses arithmetic expressions representing products and quotients, while the set *Factor* includes numbers and parenthesized expressions. Defining these additional sets is crucial for ensuring the correct precedence of operators. The basic building blocks of arithmetic expressions are variables, numbers, the operator symbols “+”, “-”, “\*”, “/”, and the bracket symbols “(” and “)”. Based on these symbols the inductive definition of the sets *Factor*, *Product* and *arithExpr* proceeds as follows:

1. Each number is a factor:

$$C \in \text{NUMBER} \Rightarrow C \in \text{factor}.$$

2. Each variable is a factor:

$$V \in \text{VARIABLE} \Rightarrow V \in \text{factor}.$$

3. If *A* is an arithmetic expression and we enclose this expression in parentheses we get an expression that we can use as a factor:

$$A \in \text{arithExpr} \Rightarrow " (" A ")" \in \text{factor}.$$

A note on notation: In the preceding formula, *A* serves as a meta-variable representing an arbitrary arithmetic expression. The strings “(” and “)” should be taken literally and are thus enclosed in quotation marks. These quotation marks are not part of the arithmetic expression; they are used solely for notational clarity.

4. If *F* is a factor, then *F* is also a product:

$$F \in \text{factor} \Rightarrow F \in \text{product}.$$

5. If *P* is a product and if *F* is a factor, then the strings *P* “\*” *F* and *P* “/” *F* are also products:

$$P \in \text{product} \wedge F \in \text{factor} \Rightarrow P "*" F \in \text{product} \wedge P "/" F \in \text{product}.$$

6. Each product is also an arithmetic expression

$$P \in \text{product} \Rightarrow P \in \text{arithExpr}.$$

7. If  $A$  is an arithmetic expression and  $P$  is a product, then the strings  $A + P$  and  $A - P$  are arithmetic expressions:

$$A \in \text{arithExpr} \wedge P \in \text{product} \Rightarrow A + P \in \text{arithExpr} \wedge A - P \in \text{arithExpr}.$$

The sets *factor*, *product*, and *arithExpr* are defined above through mutual recursion. This definition can be succinctly represented using what are known as [grammar rules](#).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{arithExpr} &\rightarrow \text{arithExpr} "+" \text{product} \\ \text{arithExpr} &\rightarrow \text{arithExpr} "-" \text{product} \\ \text{arithExpr} &\rightarrow \text{product} \\ \text{product} &\rightarrow \text{product} "*" \text{factor} \\ \text{product} &\rightarrow \text{product} "/" \text{factor} \\ \text{product} &\rightarrow \text{factor} \\ \text{factor} &\rightarrow "(" \text{arithExpr} ")" \\ \text{factor} &\rightarrow \text{VARIABLE} \\ \text{factor} &\rightarrow \text{NUMBER} \end{aligned}$$

Expressions on the left hand side of a grammar rule are known as [syntactic variables](#) or [non-terminals](#), while all other expressions are termed [terminals](#). We adopt the convention of writing syntactic variables in lowercase to align with the syntax used by the parser generator [PLY](#), which we will explore later. However, it is worth noting that in much of the existing literature, the convention is reversed: syntactic variables are typically capitalized, and terminals are presented in lowercase. Additionally, syntactic variables may occasionally be referred to as [syntactic categories](#).

In the example, *arithExpr*, *product*, and *factor* function as the [syntactic variables](#). The remaining elements, namely *NUMBER*, *VARIABLE*, and the symbols  $+$ ,  $-$ ,  $*$ ,  $/$ ,  $($ , and  $)$ , are the [terminals](#) or [tokens](#). These terminals are precisely the characters that are not found on the left side of any grammar rule. Terminals can be classified into two types:

1. Operator symbols and separators, like  $/$  and  $($ , are used in their literal sense.
2. Tokens such as *NUMBER* or *VARIABLE* carry associated values. For *NUMBER*, the value is numeric; for *VARIABLE*, it is a string representing the variable's name. To distinguish them from syntactic variables, these token types are always written in uppercase letters.

Grammar rules are often expressed in a notation more compact than the notation used previously. For the given example, the compact notation is as follows:

```

 $\text{arithExpr} \rightarrow \text{arithExpr} \text{ "+" product}$ 
|  $\text{arithExpr} \text{ "-" product}$ 
|  $\text{product}$ 
 $\text{product} \rightarrow \text{product} \text{ "*" factor}$ 
|  $\text{product} \text{ "/" factor}$ 
|  $\text{factor}$ 
 $\text{factor} \rightarrow (" \text{ arithExpr } ")$ 
| NUMBER
| VARIABLE

```

In this format, individual alternatives within a rule are demarcated by the metacharacter “|”. Building on the preceding example, we now introduce the formal definition of a [context-free grammar](#).

**Definition 21 (Context-Free Grammar)** A [context-free grammar](#)  $G$  is a quadruple

$$G = \langle V, T, R, S \rangle,$$

where

1.  $V$  is a set called [syntactic variables](#) or [non-terminals](#). In the preceding example, we have

$$V = \{\text{arithExpr}, \text{product}, \text{factor}\}.$$

2.  $T$  is a set referred to as [terminals](#) or [tokens](#). The sets  $T$  and  $V$  are disjoint, hence

$$T \cap V = \emptyset.$$

For the aforementioned example, we have

$$T = \{\text{NUMBER}, \text{VARIABLE}, "+", "-", "*", "/", "(", ")"\}.$$

3.  $R$  is a set of [grammar rules](#). Formally, a grammar rule is a pair  $\langle A, \alpha \rangle$  where:

- (a) The first component,  $A$ , is a syntactic variable:

$$A \in V.$$

- (b) The second component,  $\alpha$ , is a string composed of syntactic variables and terminals:

$$\alpha \in (V \cup T)^*.$$

Consequently, we have

$$R \subseteq V \times (V \cup T)^*.$$

A rule  $\langle x, \alpha \rangle$  is typically written as

$$x \rightarrow \alpha.$$

In the example, the first rule is

$$\text{arithExpr} \rightarrow \text{arithExpr} " + " \text{ product},$$

which formally corresponds to the pair

$$\langle \text{arithExpr}, [\text{arithExpr}, "+", \text{product}] \rangle.$$

4.  $S$  is a member of  $V$  designated as the **start symbol**. In the given example,  $\text{arithExpr}$  is the start symbol.  $\diamond$

When presenting a grammar, we typically enumerate the grammar rules and apply the following conventions to identify the start symbol and to differentiate between syntactic variables and terminals:

1. The start symbol is the syntactic variable appearing on the left side of the first rule.
2. Symbols enclosed within quotes are terminals.
3. Names beginning with an uppercase letter are terminals.
4. Names beginning with a lowercase letter are syntactic variables.

**Example:** The set of grammar rules below defines arithmetic expressions constructed from numbers, variables, and the binary operators “+”, “-”, “\*”, and “/”.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{arithExpr} &\rightarrow \text{arithExpr} " + " \text{ product} \\ &\quad | \quad \text{arithExpr} " - " \text{ product} \\ &\quad | \quad \text{product} \\ \text{product} &\rightarrow \text{product} " * " \text{ factor} \\ &\quad | \quad \text{product} " / " \text{ factor} \\ &\quad | \quad \text{factor} \\ \text{factor} &\rightarrow (" \text{arithExpr} ") \\ &\quad | \quad \text{NUMBER} \\ &\quad | \quad \text{VARIABLE} \end{aligned}$$

In this case, the following observations can be made:

1. The start symbol is  $\text{arithExpr}$ , as it is the syntactic variable on the left in the first grammar rule.
2.  $\text{arithExpr}$ ,  $\text{product}$ , and  $\text{factor}$  are recognized as syntactic variables because they start with a lowercase letter.
3. The symbols “+”, “-”, “\*”, and “/” are identified as terminals since they are enclosed in quotes.
4.  $\text{NUMBER}$  and  $\text{VARIABLE}$  are terminals, indicated by their initial uppercase letters.

### 6.1.1 Derivations

Next, we aim to identify the [language](#) defined by a given grammar  $G$ . For this purpose, we first define the concept of a [derivation step](#). Consider the following:

1.  $G = \langle V, T, R, S \rangle$  is a grammar,
2.  $b$  is a syntactic variable in  $V$ ,
3.  $\alpha b \gamma$  is a string composed of terminals and syntactic variables from  $(V \cup T)^*$ , which includes the variable  $b$ , and
4.  $b \rightarrow \delta$  is a rule in  $R$ .

Under these conditions, the string  $\alpha b \gamma$  can undergo a derivation step to transform into the string  $\alpha \delta \gamma$ . This process involves substituting one occurrence of the syntactic variable  $b$  with the right-hand side  $\delta$  of the rule  $b \rightarrow \delta$ . We denote this derivation step as

$$\alpha b \gamma \Rightarrow_G \alpha \delta \gamma.$$

When the grammar  $G$  is clear from the context, we may drop the subscript  $_G$  and simply use  $\Rightarrow$  instead of  $\Rightarrow_G$ . The transitive and reflexive closure of the relation  $\Rightarrow_G$  is indicated by  $\Rightarrow_G^*$ . To specify that the derivation of string  $w$  from the non-terminal  $b$  encompasses  $n$  derivation steps, we write this as:

$$b \Rightarrow^n w$$

We illustrate this notation with an example:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{arithExpr} &\Rightarrow \text{arithExpr} "+" \text{product} \\ &\Rightarrow \text{product} "+" \text{product} \\ &\Rightarrow \text{product} "*" \text{factor} "+" \text{product} \\ &\Rightarrow \text{factor} "*" \text{factor} "+" \text{product} \\ &\Rightarrow \text{NUMBER} "*" \text{factor} "+" \text{product} \\ &\Rightarrow \text{NUMBER} "*" \text{NUMBER} "+" \text{product} \\ &\Rightarrow \text{NUMBER} "*" \text{NUMBER} "+" \text{factor} \\ &\Rightarrow \text{NUMBER} "*" \text{NUMBER} "+" \text{NUMBER} \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we have demonstrated that

$$\text{arithExpr} \Rightarrow^* \text{NUMBER} "*" \text{NUMBER} "+" \text{NUMBER}$$

is valid. To be more precise, we could express this as

$$\text{arithExpr} \Rightarrow^8 \text{NUMBER} "*" \text{NUMBER} "+" \text{NUMBER}$$

since the derivation comprises eight steps. By substituting the terminal `NUMBER` with distinct numerals, we demonstrate that the string

$$2 * 3 + 4$$

is an arithmetic expression. Generally, the language  $L(G)$  defined by a grammar  $G$  is the set of all strings that are exclusively composed of terminals and can be derived from the start symbol  $S$  of the grammar; that is, we define

$$L(G) := \{w \in T^* \mid S \Rightarrow^* w\}.$$

**Example:** The language

$$L = \{(n)^n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$$

is generated by the grammar

$$G = \langle \{s\}, \{"(", ")"\}, R, s \rangle,$$

where the set of rules  $R$  is defined as:

$$s \rightarrow "("s")" \mid \lambda.$$

**Exercise 18:** We define  $\Sigma = \{"a", "b"\}$  and define the language  $L$  as the set of words  $w \in \Sigma^*$  in which the letters “a” and “b” occur with the same frequency:

$$L := \{w \in \Sigma^* \mid \text{count}(w, "a") = \text{count}(w, "b")\}$$

Define a grammar  $G$  such that  $L = L(G)$ .  $\diamond$

**Exercise 19:** Define  $\Sigma := \{"a", "b"\}$ . In the previous chapter, we have already defined the reversal of a string  $w = c_1c_2 \cdots c_{n-1}c_n \in \Sigma^*$  as the string

$$w^R := c_nc_{n-1} \cdots c_2c_1.$$

A string  $w \in \Sigma^*$  is called a **palindrome** if the string is identical to its reversal, i.e. if

$$w = w^R$$

holds true. For example, the strings

$$w_1 = ababa \quad \text{and} \quad w_2 = abba$$

are both palindromes, while the string abb is not a palindrome. The **language of palindromes**  $L_{\text{palindrome}}$  is the set of all strings in  $\Sigma^*$  that are palindromes, i.e. we have

$$L_{\text{palindrome}} := \{w \in \Sigma^* \mid w = w^R\}.$$

(a) Prove that the language  $L_{\text{palindrome}}$  is a context-free language.

(b) Prove that the language  $L_{\text{palindrome}}$  is not a regular language.  $\diamond$

### 6.1.2 Parse Trees

Using a grammar  $G$ , we can not only tell whether a given string  $s$  is an element of the language  $L(G)$  generated by the grammar, we can also **structure** the string by building a **parse tree**. If a grammar is

$$G = \langle V, T, R, S \rangle$$

given, a **parse tree** for this grammar is a tree satisfying the following conditions:

1. The tree consists of two types of nodes:
  - (a) The **leaf nodes** are those nodes that have no outgoing edges.
  - (b) The **inner nodes** are all those nodes that have outgoing edges.
2. Each **inner node** is labeled with a variable.

3. Each **leaf node** is labeled with a terminal or with a variable.
4. If a leaf node is labeled with a variable  $a$ , then the grammar contains a rule of the form  

$$a \rightarrow \lambda.$$
5. If an inner node is labeled with a variable  $a$  and the children of this node are labeled with the symbols  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$ , then the grammar  $G$  contains a rule of the form  

$$a \rightarrow X_1 X_2 \dots X_n.$$

If we read the leave nodes of a parse tree from left to right, they yield a word that is derived from the grammar  $G$ . Figure 6.2 shows a parse tree for the word “1+2\*3”. It is derived using the grammar given above for arithmetic expressions.



Figure 6.2: A parse tree for the string “1+2\*3”.

Since trees of the type shown in Figure 6.2 become too large very quickly we simplify these trees using the following rules:

1. Is  $n$  an interior node labeled with the variable  $A$  and among the children of this node there is exactly one child labeled with a terminal  $o$  then we remove this child and label the node  $n$  instead with the terminal  $o$ .
2. If an inner node has only one child, we replace that node with its child.
3. If an outer node is labeled with either ‘(’ or ‘)’, then it is dropped.

We call the tree obtained in this way the **abstract syntax tree**. Figure 6.3 shows an abstract syntax tree that can be used to evaluate the arithmetic expression “2+3\*4”, because the tree shows us the order for evaluating the operators.

### 6.1.3 Ambiguous Grammars

The grammar given at the beginning of section 6.1 to describe arithmetic expressions seems very complicated because it uses three different syntactic categories: *arithExpr*, *product*, and *factor*. We



Figure 6.3: The abstract syntax tree for the string “2+3\*4”.

introduce a simpler grammar  $G$  which describes the same language:

$$G = \langle \{\text{expr}\}, \{\text{NUMBER}, \text{VARIABLE}, "+", "-", "*", "/", "(", ")"\}, R, \text{expr} \rangle,$$

The rules  $R$  are given as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{expr} &\rightarrow \text{expr } "+" \text{ expr} \\ &\mid \text{expr } "-" \text{ expr} \\ &\mid \text{expr } "*" \text{ expr} \\ &\mid \text{expr } "/" \text{ expr} \\ &\mid "(" \text{ expr } ")" \\ &\mid \text{NUMBER} \\ &\mid \text{VARIABLE} \end{aligned}$$

In order to show that the string “2 \* 3+4” is in the language generated by this grammar, we give the following derivation:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{expr} &\Rightarrow \text{expr } "+" \text{ expr} \\ &\Rightarrow \text{expr } "*" \text{ expr } "+" \text{ expr} \\ &\Rightarrow 2 \text{ } "*" \text{ expr } "+" \text{ expr} \\ &\Rightarrow 2 \text{ } "*" \text{ } 3 \text{ } "+" \text{ expr} \\ &\Rightarrow 2 \text{ } "*" \text{ } 3 \text{ } "+" \text{ } 4 \end{aligned}$$

This derivation corresponds to the abstract syntax tree shown in Fig. 6.3 is shown. However, there is another derivation of the string “2 \* 3+4” with this grammar:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{expr} &\Rightarrow \text{expr } "*" \text{ expr} \\ &\Rightarrow \text{expr } "*" \text{ expr } "+" \text{ expr} \\ &\Rightarrow 2 \text{ } "*" \text{ expr } "+" \text{ expr} \\ &\Rightarrow 2 \text{ } "*" \text{ } 3 \text{ } "+" \text{ expr} \\ &\Rightarrow 2 \text{ } "*" \text{ } 3 \text{ } "+" \text{ } 4 \end{aligned}$$

This derivation corresponds to the abstract syntax tree shown in Fig. 6.4. In this derivation, the string “2 \* 3+4” is apparently taken to be a product, which contradicts the convention that the operator “\*”



Figure 6.4: Another abstract syntax tree for the string “ $2 * 3 + 4$ ”.

binds stronger than the operator “ $+$ ”. If we were to evaluate the string using the last syntax tree, we would obviously get the wrong result! The reason for this problem is the fact that the last specified grammar is [ambiguous](#). An ambiguous grammar is unsuitable for parsing. Unfortunately, the question of whether a given grammar is ambiguous is, in general, not [decidable](#): It can be shown that this question is equivalent to the [Post correspondence problem](#). Since Post’s correspondence problem has been shown to be undecidable, the question whether a grammar is ambiguous is also unsolvable. Proofs of these claims can be found, for example, in the book by Hopcroft, Motwani, and Ullman [[HMU06](#)].

## 6.2 Top-Down Parser

In this section, we present a method that can be used to conveniently parse a whole range of grammars. The basic idea is simple: In order to parse a string  $w$  using a grammar rule of the form

$$a \rightarrow X_1 X_2 \cdots X_n$$

we try to parse an  $X_1$  first. In doing so, we decompose the string  $w$  into the form  $w = w_1 r_1$  such that  $w_1 \in L(X_1)$  holds. Then we try to find an  $X_2$  in the residual string  $r_1$ , thus decomposing  $r_1$  as  $r_1 = w_2 r_2$  where  $w_2 \in L(X_2)$  holds. Continuing this process, we end up with the string  $w$  being split as

$$w = w_1 w_2 \cdots w_n \quad \text{with } w_i \in L(X_i) \text{ for all } i = 1, \dots, n.$$

Unfortunately, this procedure does not work when the grammar is [left-recursive](#), that is, a rule has the form

$$a \rightarrow a \beta$$

because then to parse an  $a$  we would immediately try again to parse an  $a$  and thus we would be stuck in an infinite loop. There are two ways to deal with this kind of problem:

- (a) We can rewrite the grammar so that it no longer is left-recursive.
- (b) A simpler method is to extend the notion of a context-free grammar. We will use the notion of a so called [extended Backus Naur form](#) grammar (abbreviated as EBNF-grammar). Theoretically, the expressive power of EBNF grammars is the same as the expressive power of context-free grammars. In practice, however, it turns out that the construction of top-down parsers for EBNF grammars is easier, because in an EBNF grammar the left recursion can often be replaced by iteration in a natural way.

In the rest of this chapter we will discuss the second of these two procedures in more detail using the grammar for arithmetic expressions as an example.

### 6.2.1 Implementing a Recursive Descent Parser that Uses an EBNF Grammar

In this section, we improve the convenience of context-free languages by admitting the regular expression operators “\*”, “|”, and “?” on the right hand side of grammar rules. The meaning of these operators is the same as when these operators are used in the regular expressions of the programming language *Python*. Furthermore, the right hand side of a grammar rule can be structured using parentheses. These new type of grammars are known as *extended Backus Naur form* grammars, which is abbreviated as *EBNF* grammars.



Figure 6.5: EBNF grammar for arithmetical expressions.

It can be shown that the languages described by EBNF grammars are still context-free languages. Therefore, these operators do not change the expressive power of context-free grammars. However, it is often much more convenient to describe a language using an EBNF grammar rather than using a context-free grammar. Figure 6.5 displays an EBNF grammar for arithmetical expressions.

Figure 6.6 shows a recursive descent parser that implements this grammar.

1. The function `parseExpr` recognizes a `product` in line 2. The value of this `product` is stored in the variable `result` together with the list `Rest` of those tokens that have not been consumed yet. If the list `Rest` is not empty and the first token in this list is either the operator “+” or the operator “-”, then the function `parseExpr` tries to recognize more `products`. These are added to or subtracted from the `result` computed so far in line 7 or 9. If there are no more `products` to be parsed, the `while` loop terminates and the function returns the `result` together with the list of the remaining tokens `Rest`.
2. The function `parseProduct` recognizes a `factor` in line 13. The value of this `factor` is stored in the variable `result` together with the list `Rest` of those tokens that have not been consumed yet. If the list `Rest` is not empty and the first token in this list is either the operator “\*” or the operator “/”, then the function `parseProduct` tries to recognize more `factors`. The `result` computed so far is multiplied with or divided by these `factors` in line 18 or 20. If there are no more `products` to be parsed, the `while` loop terminates and the function returns the `result` together with the list `Rest` of tokens that have not been consumed.
3. The function `parseFactor` recognizes a `factor`. This is either an expression in parentheses or a number.
  - If the first token is a an opening parenthesis, the function tries to parse an expression next. This expression has to be followed by a closing parenthesis. The tokens following this closing parenthesis are not consumed but rather are returned together with the result of evaluating the expression.

- If the first token is a number, this number is returned together with the list of all those tokens that have not been consumed.

---

```

1  def parseExpr(TL):
2      result, Rest = parseProduct(TL)
3      while len(Rest) > 1 and Rest[0] in {'+', '-'}:
4          operator = Rest[0]
5          arg, Rest = parseProduct(Rest[1:])
6          if operator == '+':
7              result += arg
8          else:           # operator == '-':
9              result -= arg
10     return result, Rest
11
12 def parseProduct(TL):
13     result, Rest = parseFactor(TL)
14     while len(Rest) > 1 and Rest[0] in {'*', '/'}:
15         operator = Rest[0]
16         arg, Rest = parseFactor(Rest[1:])
17         if operator == '*':
18             result *= arg
19         else:           # operator == '/':
20             result /= arg
21     return result, Rest
22
23 def parseFactor(TL):
24     if TL[0] == '(':
25         expr, R = parseExpr(TL[1:])
26         assert Rest[0] == ')', "ERROR: ')' expected, got {R[0]}"
27         return expr, Rest[1:]
28     else:
29         assert isinstance(TL[0], int),
30                 "ERROR: Number expected, got {TL[0]}"
31         return TL[0], TL[1:]

```

---

Figure 6.6: A recursive descent parser for the grammar in Figure 6.5.

**Exercise 20:** Develop an EBNF grammar for regular expressions and implement a top down parser for this grammar. The resulting grammar should return a nested tuple that represents a regular expression.

◇

**Historical Notes** The language ALGOL [Bac59, NBB<sup>+</sup>60] was the first programming language with a syntax that was based on an EBNF grammar.

## 6.3 Check your Understanding

- (a) Define the concept of a [context-free grammar](#).
- (b) Assume that  $G$  is a context-free grammar. How is the language  $L(G)$  defined?
- (c) What is the definition of a [parse tree](#)?
- (d) How do we transform a parse tree into an [abstract syntax tree](#)?
- (e) What are ambiguous grammars?
- (f) Define the notion of an [EBNF grammar](#).
- (g) Implement a top down parser for arithmetic expressions.

## Chapter 7

# Using Ply as a Parser Generator

*Give a man a parser and he can read one programming language.  
Give a man a parser generator and he can read all programming languages.*

---

— Carlos Ben Yussuf

*Build a witch a fire and you keep her warm for one night.  
Set a witch on fire and you keep her warm for the rest of her life.*

---

— Pope Hugo The Terrible



Figure 7.1: A scientist feeding a grammar to a parser generator golem.

Many modern programming languages, e.g. C, Java, or Go can be parsed using a so called LALR(1)-Parser<sup>1</sup>. languages later, this chapter introduces the parser generator **Ply**, which can be used to generate a parser for any language that has an LALR(1) grammar. In Chapter 3 we have already seen how PLY can be used to generate a scanner. This chapter focuses on the parser-generating aspect of PLY. We will discuss three example that use PLY as a parser generator.

1. First, we implement a symbolic calculator using PLY.
2. In our second example, we develop a program for symbolic differentiation. This example shows how PLY can be used to construct an abstract syntax tree.
3. In our final example we create an interpreter for a language that is a small fragment of the programming language C.

## 7.1 A Symbolic Calculator

Figure 7.2 on page 84 shows the grammar of a simple **symbolic calculator**, i.e. a calculator that supports the use of variables.



Figure 7.2: A grammar for a symbolic calculator.

In order to generate a symbolic calculator that is based on this grammar we first need to implement a scanner. Figure 7.3 shows how to specify an appropriate scanner with PLY. As we have discussed scanner generation with PLY at length in Chapter 3 there is no need for further discussions here.

Figure 7.4 on page 86 shows how the grammar is implemented in PLY. We discuss it line by line.

<sup>1</sup>LALR(1) is an acronym that stands for **Look-Ahead Left-to-Right** parsing with 1 token of lookahead. We will discuss the theory of LALR(1) parsing at the end of Chapter 9.

```

1 import ply.lex as lex
2
3 tokens = [ 'NUMBER', 'IDENTIFIER', 'ASSIGN' ]
4
5 def t_NUMBER(t):
6     r'0|[1-9][0-9]*(\.[0-9]+)?([eE][+-]?([1-9][0-9]*))?'
7     t.value = float(t.value)
8     return t
9
10 def t_IDENTIFIER(t):
11     r'[a-zA-Z][a-zA-Z0-9_]*'
12     return t
13
14 t_ASSIGN = r':='
15
16 literals = ['+', '-', '*', '/', '(', ')', ';']
17
18 t_ignore = ' \t'
19
20 def t_newline(t):
21     r'\n+'
22     t.lineno += t.value.count('\n')
23
24 def t_error(t):
25     c = t.value[0]
26     l = t.lineno
27     print(f"Illegal character '{c}' in line {l}.")
28     t.lexer.skip(1)
29
30 lexer = lex.lex()

```

Figure 7.3: A scanner for the symbolic calculator.

- Line 1 imports the module `ply.yacc`. This module contains the function `ply.yacc.yacc` which is responsible for computing the parse table. The name `yacc` is a homage to the Unix tool `Yacc`, which is a popular parser generator for the language C and, furthermore, is part of the standard utilities of the Unix operating system.
- Line 3 specifies that the syntactical variable `stmtnt` is the `start symbol` of the grammar.
- Line 5 – 7 define the function `p_stmtnt_assign` which implements the grammar rule  

$$\text{stmtnt} \rightarrow \text{IDENTIFIER } ":" \text{expr}$$
.

This grammar rule is represented by the `document string` of the function `p_stmtnt_assign`. In general, if

---

```

1  import ply.yacc as yacc
2
3  start = 'stmnt'
4
5  def p_stmnt_assign(p):
6      "stmnt : IDENTIFIER ASSIGN expr ';' "
7      Names2Values[p[1]] = p[3]
8
9  def p_stmnt_expr(p):
10     "stmnt : expr ';' "
11     print(p[1])
12
13 def p_expr_plus(p):
14     "expr : expr '+' prod"
15     p[0] = p[1] + p[3]
16
17 def p_expr_minus(p):
18     "expr : expr '-' prod"
19     p[0] = p[1] - p[3]
20
21 def p_expr_prod(p):
22     "expr : prod"
23     p[0] = p[1]
24
25 def p_prod_mult(p):
26     "prod : prod '*' factor"
27     p[0] = p[1] * p[3]
28
29 def p_prod_div(p):
30     "prod : prod '/' factor"
31     p[0] = p[1] / p[3]
32
33 def p_prod_factor(p):
34     "prod : factor"
35     p[0] = p[1]

```

---

Figure 7.4: A parser for the symbolic calculator, part I.

$$v \rightarrow \alpha$$

is a grammar rule, then this grammar rule is represented by a function that has the name `p_v_s`. Here, the prefix “`p_`” specifies that the function implements a grammar rule (the `p` is short for `parser`), `v` should<sup>2</sup> be the name of the variable defined by this grammar rule, and `s` is a string

---

<sup>2</sup>This is just a convention. Technically, `v` can be any string that is a valid Python identifier.

chosen by the user to distinguish between different grammar rules for the same variable. Of course,  $s$  has to be chosen in a way such that the string  $p\_v\_s$  is a legal Python identifier.

The function always takes one argument  $p$ . This argument is a sequence of objects that can be indexed with array notation. If the grammar rule defining  $v$  has the form

$$v \rightarrow X_1 \cdots X_n,$$

then this sequence has a length of  $n + 1$ . If  $X_i$  is a token, then  $p[i]$  is the property with name `value` that is associated with this token. Often, this value is just a string, but it can also be a number. If  $X_i$  is a variable, then  $p[i]$  is the value that is returned when  $X_i$  is recognized. The value associated with the variable  $v$  is stored in the location  $p[0]$ . In the grammar rule shown in line 5–7, we have not assigned any value to  $p[0]$  and therefore there is no value associated with the syntactical variable `stmt` that is defined by this grammar rule.

**Note:** Line 6 shows how a grammar rule is represented for PLY. A grammar rule of the form

$$v \rightarrow X_1 \cdots X_n$$

is represented as the string:

$$\text{"}v : X_1 \cdots X_n\text{"}$$

It is very **important** that the character “`:`” is surrounded by space characters. Otherwise, the parser generator does not work but rather generates error messages that are difficult to understand.

The function `p_stmt_assign` has the task of evaluating the expression that is on the right hand side of the assignment operator “`:=`”. The result of this evaluation is then stored in the dictionary `Names2Values`. The key that is used is the name of the identifier to the left of the assignment operator.

#### 4. The function in line 9 – 11 implements the grammar rule

$$\text{stmt} \rightarrow \text{expr ";} .$$

The rule is implemented by evaluating the expression and then printing it.

#### 5. The function `p_expr_plus` implements the grammar rule

$$\text{expr} \rightarrow \text{expr "+" prod.}$$

It is implemented by evaluating the expression to the left of the operator “`+`”, which is stored in  $p[1]$ , and the product to the right of this operator, which is stored in  $p[3]$ , and then adding the corresponding values. Finally, the resulting sum is stored in  $p[0]$  so that it is available later as the value of the expression that has been parsed.

The remaining functions are similar to the ones that are discussed above.

```

36     def p_factor_group(p):
37         "factor : '(' expr ')'"
38         p[0] = p[2]
39
40     def p_factor_number(p):
41         "factor : NUMBER"
42         p[0] = p[1]
43
44     def p_factor_id(p):
45         "factor : IDENTIFIER"
46         p[0] = Names2Values.get(p[1], float('nan'))
47
48     def p_error(p):
49         l = p.lexer.lineno
50         if p:
51             print(f'Syntax error at {p.value} in line {l}.')
52         else:
53             print('Syntax error at end of input.')
54
55     parser = yacc.yacc()
56
57     Names2Values = {}
58
59     def main():
60         while True:
61             s = input('calc > ')
62             if s == '':
63                 break
64             yacc.parse(s)

```

Figure 7.5: A parser for the symbolic calculator, part II.

Figure 7.5 on page 88 is discussed next.

- Line 48 – 43 shows the function `p_error` which is used to print error messages in the case that the input can not be parsed because of a syntax error. The argument `p` is the token  $t$  that caused the entry  $\text{action}(s, t)$  in the action table to be undefined. If the syntax error happens at the end of the input, `p` has the value `None`.
- Line 55 generates the parser.
- Line 57 initializes the dictionary `Names2Values`. For every identifier  $x$  defined interactively, `Names2Values[x]` is the value associated with  $x$ .
- The function `main` is used as a driver for the parser. It reads a string `s` from the command line

and tries to parse  $s$  using the function `yacc.parse`. The function `yacc.parse` is generated behind the scenes when the function `yacc.yacc` is invoked in line 55.

The Jupyter notebook `01-Calculator`, which is available at

<https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/Python/Chapter-07/01-Calculator.ipynb>

implements the symbolic calculator discussed in this section.

## 7.2 Symbolic Differentiation

Our next example shows how we can compute an abstract syntax tree with the help of PLY. The Jupyter notebook `02-Differentiator`, which is available at

<https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/Python/Chapter-07/02-Differentiator.ipynb>

implements a parser that generates an abstract syntax tree, which can then be used for symbolic differentiation.

## 7.3 Implementing a Simple Interpreter

Figure 7.6 show the grammar of a simple programming language. In this section, we will develop an interpreter for this language.

The statements of the language that we want to implement include *assignments*, *function calls*, *if statements*, and *while loops*. The language supports boolean expression that can be build with the help of the comparison operators

`==, !=, <=, >=, <, and >`.

Arithmetic expression can use the arithmetic operators

`+, +, -, *, and /`.

In the base case, arithmetic expressions are build from numbers, variables, and function calls. Although the language supports the calling of predefined functions like `read` and `print`, it does not support user defined functions.

Figure 7.7 shows an example program that conforms to this grammar. This program first reads a number which is stored in the variable `n`. Subsequently, the sum

$$s := \sum_{i=1}^{n^2} i$$

is computed using a `while` loop. Finally, this sum is printed.

```
1  program
2      : /* Lambda */
3      | stmnt program
4
5  stmnt
6      : IF '(' bool_expr ')' stmnt
7      | WHILE '(' bool_expr ')' stmnt
8      | '{' program '}'
9      | ID ':=' expr ';'
10     | expr ';'
11
12  bool_expr
13     : expr '==' expr
14     | expr '!=' expr
15     | expr '<=' expr
16     | expr '>=' expr
17     | expr '<' expr
18     | expr '>' expr
19
20  expr: expr '+' product
21     | expr '-' product
22     | product
23
24  product
25     : product '*' factor
26     | product '/' factor
27     | factor
28
29  factor
30     : '(' expr ')'
31     | NUMBER
32     | ID
33     | ID '(' expr_list ')'
34
35  expr_list
36     : /* Lambda */
37     | expr ',' ne_expr_list
38
39  ne_expr_list
40     : expr
41     | expr ',' ne_expr_list
```

---

Figure 7.6: A grammar for a simple programming language.

---

```

1   n := read();
2   s := 0;
3   i := 0;
4   while (i < n * n) {
5       i := i + 1;
6       s := s + i;
7   }
8   print(s);

```

---

Figure 7.7: A program to compute the sum  $\sum_{i=0}^{n^2} i$ .

Similar to our program for symbolic differentiation, we will represent the individual commands as nested tuples. The program shown in Figure 7.7 is represented by the nested tuple displayed in Figure 7.8. This nested tuple is nothing other than the abstract syntax tree corresponding to the original program. Note that lists of commands are represented as nested tuples that start with a “.”.

---

```

1   ('.',
2     ('read', 'n'),
3     (':=', 's', 0),
4     (':=', 'i', 0),
5     ('while', ('<', 'i', ('*', 'n', 'n')),
6       ('.',
7         (':=', 'i', ('+', 'i', 1)),
8         (':=', 's', ('+', 's', 'i')))
9       )
10    ),
11    ('print', 's')
12  )

```

---

Figure 7.8: A nested tuple that represents the program from Figure 7.7.

Figure 7.9 on 92 show the implementation of the scanner. The scanner primarily differentiates between variables (token IDENTIFIER) and numbers (token NUMBER). Variables start with an uppercase or lowercase letter, followed by additional digits and the underscore. Furthermore, there are operator symbols for the comparison operators “==”, “!=”, “<=”, “>=”, “<”, and “>”, for the arithmetic operators “+”, “-”, “\*”, “/”, the parentheses “(” and “)”, and for the assignment operator “:=”. Note that only those operators names that consist of more than two characters have to be declared as tokens, since the other symbols can be declared as literals. Finally, the language is equipped with two keywords “if” and “while”. The scanner is pretty standard, but there are two things worth mentioning.

1. The scanner removes white space and comments. The language supports two kinds of comments:
  - (a) The language supports multiline comments, i.e. text surrounded by “/\*” “\*/”. These comments have the form

```

1  tokens = [ 'NUMBER',      # r'0|[1-9][0-9]*'
2      'ID',               # r'[a-zA-Z][a-zA-Z0-9_]*'
3      'ASSIGN',            # r':='
4      'EQ',                # r'==''
5      'NE',                # r'!='
6      'LE',                # r'<='
7      'GE',                # r'>='
8      'IF',                # r'if'
9      'WHILE'              # r'while'
10     ]
11
12 def t_COMMENT(t):
13     r'(/[*(.|\n)*?\*/)|(//.*)'
14     t.lexer.lineno += t.value.count('\n')
15     pass
16
17 def t_NUMBER(t):
18     r'0|[1-9][0-9]*'
19     t.value = int(t.value)
20     return t
21
22 t_ASSIGN = r':='
23 t_EQ     = r'==''
24 t_NE     = r'!='
25 t_LE     = r'<='
26 t_GE     = r'>='
27
28 Keywords = { 'if': 'IF', 'while': 'WHILE' }
29
30 def t_IDENTIFIER(t):
31     r'[a-zA-Z][a-zA-Z0-9_]*'
32     t.type = Keywords.get(t.value, 'ID')
33     return t
34
35 literals = ['+', '-', '*', '/', '%', '(', ')', '{', '}', ';', '<', '>', ',', ',']
36
37 t_ignore = ' \t\r'

```

Figure 7.9: Implementation of the scanner.

/\* ... \*/

where “...” denotes arbitrary text not containing the substring “\*/”.

We have to use the so-called *non-greedy* version of the Kleene operator “\*” in the specifica-

tion of multiline comments. The non-greedy version of the operator “\*” is written as “\*?” and matches as little as possible. Therefore, the regular expression

```
/\*(.\|\n)*?\*/
```

represents a string that starts with the character sequence “/\*”, ends with the character sequence “\*/”, and is as short as possible. This ensures that in a line like

```
/* Hugo */ i := i + 1; /* Anton */
```

two separate comments are recognized.

- (b) Furthermore, the language supports one line comments that start with the character sequence “//” and extend to the end of the line.

Note that the symbol `COMMENT` is not declared as a token. The reason is that it won’t appear in the grammar rules later, as comments are discarded by the scanner.

2. The treatment of keywords requires special care. Since both “if” and “while” have the same syntactical form as variables, the function `t_IDENTIFIER` recognizes them. This is done with the help of the dictionary `Keywords`. If `t_IDENTIFIER` finds a string of characters, it first checks, whether this string has an associated token value in the dictionary `Keywords`. If there is a value associated with the string, the string is a keyword and the corresponding token is returned. On the other hand, if the string is not stored in the dictionary `Keywords`, the function `get` returns the token `IDENTIFIER` as a default.

The figures 7.10, 7.11, 7.12, 7.13, and 7.14 show the implementation of the parser using Ply. Figure 7.10 on page 94 implements the following grammar rules:

---

```

1 program
2   : /* epsilon */
3   | stmnt program
4
5 stmnt
6   : IF '(' bool_expr ')' stmnt
7   | WHILE '(' bool_expr ')' stmnt
8   | '{' program '}'
9   | IDENTIFIER ':=' expr ';'
10  | expr ';'
```

---

The start symbol of the grammar is the variable `program`. When parsing this variable, the parser returns a nested tuple of statements. The first element of this tuple is a dot “.”.

The syntactic variable `stmt` describes the various commands that are supported in our simple language.

- (a) A conditional test has the syntax:

```
if ( b ) stmnt
```

Here, `b` is an expression that evaluates to True or False and `stmt` is a statement that is executed if `b` evaluates to True. This command is represented by the nested tuple

```

1  def p_program_lambda(p):
2      "program : "
3      p[0] = ('.',)
4
5  def p_program_more(p):
6      "program : stmtt program"
7      p[0] = ('.', p[1]) + p[2][1:]
8
9  def p_stmtt_if(p):
10     "stmtt : IF '(' bool_expr ')' stmtt"
11     p[0] = ('if', p[3], p[5])
12
13 def p_stmtt_while(p):
14     "stmtt : WHILE '(' bool_expr ')' stmtt"
15     p[0] = ('while', p[3], p[5])
16
17 def p_stmtt_block(p):
18     "stmtt : '{' program '}'"
19     p[0] = p[2]
20
21 def p_stmtt_assign(p):
22     "stmtt : IDENTIFIER ASSIGN expr ';' "
23     p[0] = (':=', p[1], p[3])
24
25 def p_stmtt_expr(p):
26     "stmtt : expr ';' "
27     p[0] = ('expr', p[1])

```

---

Figure 7.10: Specification of statements.

$(\text{'if'}, b, \text{stmtt}).$

Here,  $b$  is a nested tuple representing the Boolean expression.

(b) A loop has the syntax:

$\text{while } (\text{ } b \text{ } ) \text{stmtt}.$

Here,  $b$  is an expression that evaluates to True or False and  $\text{stmtt}$  is a statement that is executed as long as  $b$  evaluates to True. This statement is represented by the nested tuple

$(\text{'while'}, b, \text{stmtt}).$

(c) A block statement is a list of statements that is surrounded by curly braces.

(d) The simplest commands are the assignments. These have the form:

$v := e;$

Here,  $v$  is a variable and  $e$  is an arithmetic expression. An assignment is represented by the nested

tuple

$(':=, v, e)$ .

- (e) Furthermore, every expression is a statement if it is followed by a semicolon. The reason to allow this is that some expressions have side effects. Syntactically, the string “`print(1+2)`” is an expression as it is a function call. By writing it as

`print(1+2);`

we can execute it as a statement.

---

```

1  def p_bool_expr_eq(p):
2      "bool_expr : expr EQ expr"
3      p[0] = ('==', p[1], p[3])
4
5  def p_bool_expr_ne(p):
6      "bool_expr : expr NE expr"
7      p[0] = ('!=', p[1], p[3])
8
9  def p_bool_expr_le(p):
10     "bool_expr : expr LE expr"
11     p[0] = ('<=', p[1], p[3])
12
13 def p_bool_expr_ge(p):
14     "bool_expr : expr GE expr"
15     p[0] = ('>=', p[1], p[3])
16
17 def p_bool_expr_lt(p):
18     "bool_expr : expr '<' expr"
19     p[0] = ('<', p[1], p[3])
20
21 def p_bool_expr_gt(p):
22     "bool_expr : expr '>' expr"
23     p[0] = ('>', p[1], p[3])
24

```

---

Figure 7.11: Specification of boolean expressions.

Figure 7.11 shows the parsing of boolean expressions. It implements the following grammar rule.

---

```

1  bool_expr
2      : expr '==' expr
3      | expr '!= expr
4      | expr '<=' expr
5      | expr '>=' expr
6      | expr '<' expr
7      | expr '>' expr

```

---

The syntactic variable `boolExpr` describes an expression that takes a Boolean value.

1. An expression of the form

$l == r$

tests whether the evaluations of  $l$  and  $r$  yield the same values. This expression is represented by the nested tuple

$('==', l, r)$ .

2. The other cases are similar.

The figure 7.12 and 7.13 on page 97 implements the following grammar rules:

---

```

1  expr: expr '+' product
2      | expr '-' product
3      | product
4
5  product
6      : product '*' factor
7      | product '/' factor
8      | product '%' factor
9      | factor
10
11  factor
12      : '(' expr ')'
13      | NUMBER
14      | IDENTIFIER
15      | IDENTIFIER '(' expr_list ')'

```

---

To understand the code shown in Figure 7.12 and 7.13 we have to understand the following:

1. An arithmetic expression of the form  $a + b$  is represented as a triple of the form

$('+', x, y)$

where  $x$  and  $y$  are the tuples corresponding to the abstract syntax trees of  $a$  and  $b$ , respectively.

2. Arithmetic expressions using the operators “ $-$ ”, “ $*$ ”, “ $/$ ”, “ $\%$ ” are represented analogously.

---

```

1  def p_expr_plus(p):
2      "expr : expr '+' product"
3      p[0] = ('+', p[1], p[3])
4  def p_expr_minus(p):
5      "expr : expr '-' product"
6      p[0] = ('-', p[1], p[3])
7
8  def p_expr_product(p):
9      "expr : product"
10     p[0] = p[1]
11
12 def p_product_times(p):
13     "product : product '*' expr"
14     p[0] = ('*', p[1], p[3])
15 def p_product_divide(p):
16     "product : product '/' expr"
17     p[0] = ('/', p[1], p[3])
18
19 def p_product_modulo(p):
20     "product : product '%' factor"
21     p[0] = ('%', p[1], p[3])
22
23 def p_product_factor(p):
24     "product : factor"
25     p[0] = p[1]

```

---

Figure 7.12: Specification of arithmetic expressions, part I.

3. A parenthesized expression, i.e. an expression of the form

( $e$ )

is represented by the abstract tree that represents  $e$ . Therefore, the parentheses are just used for grouping and do not appear in the abstract syntax tree.

4. A number is represented by itself.

5. A variable is represented by its name, i.e. the variable  $x$  is represented by the string “ $x$ ”.

6. A function call of the form

$f(a_1, \dots, a_n)$

is represented by the tuple

$(\text{'call'}, f, a_1, \dots, a_n)$ .

---

```

26  def p_product_factor(p):
27      "product : factor"
28      p[0] = p[1]
29
30  def p_factor_paren(p):
31      "factor : '(' expr ')'"
32      p[0] = p[2]
33
34  def p_factor_number(p):
35      "factor : NUMBER"
36      p[0] = p[1]
37
38  def p_factor_id(p):
39      "factor : IDENTIFIER"
40      p[0] = p[1]
41
42  def p_factor_fct_call(p):
43      "factor : IDENTIFIER '(' expr_list ')'"
44      p[0] = ('call', p[1]) + p[3][1:]

```

---

Figure 7.13: Specification of arithmetic expressions, part II.

Figure 7.14 on page 99 implements the following grammar rules:

---

```

1  expr_list
2      :
3      | expr ',' ne_expr_list
4
5  ne_expr_list
6      : expr
7      | expr ',' ne_expr_list

```

---

Figure 7.15 shows the function `main`, which receives the name of a file containing a program in our simple programming language as input. This program is parsed and thus transformed into a tuple of statements. The function `execute` executes this tuple. In order to do so, it needs to know the values of all variables. These are stored in the dictionary `Values`, which initially is empty. Every time a variable is assigned, the variable and the corresponding value will be stored in this dictionary.

Figure 7.16 shows the implementation of the function `execute`. This implementation consists mainly of a large case distinction based on the type of command to be executed.

1. First, we check if `stmtnt` is a list of statements. A statement is a list of statements if the first element of the tuple representing this statement is the string `'.'`.

In this case, the statements following the string `'.'` are executed via the auxiliary function `execute_tuple`.

```

1  def p_expr_list_empty(p):
2      "expr_list : "
3      p[0] = ('.',)
4
5  def p_expr_list_one(p):
6      "expr_list : expr"
7      p[0] = ('.', p[1])
8
9  def p_expr_list_more(p):
10     "expr_list : expr ',' ne_expr_list"
11     p[0] = ('.', p[1]) + p[3][1:]
12
13 def p_ne_expr_list_one(p):
14     "ne_expr_list : expr"
15     p[0] = ('.', p[1])
16
17 def p_ne_expr_list_more(p):
18     "ne_expr_list : expr ',' ne_expr_list"
19     p[0] = ('.', p[1]) + p[3][1:]

```

---

Figure 7.14: Specification of lists of expressions.

```

1  def main(file):
2      with open(file, 'r') as handle:
3          program = handle.read()
4          stmnt = yacc.parse(program)
5          Values = {}
6          execute(stmnt, Values)

```

---

Figure 7.15: Specification of the function main.

2. If the statement is an assignment of the form

$(':=', \text{var}, \text{value})$

then the value of the expression `value` is computed using the function `evaluate`. This value is then stored in the dictionary `Values` under the key `var`.

3. If the statement is an expression statement of the form

$(\text{expr}', \text{expr})$

then the corresponding `expr` is evaluated using the function `evaluate`.

4. If the command is of the form

$('if', \text{test}, \text{stmt})$

---

```

1  def execute(stmnt: NestedTuple, Values: dict[str, Number]) -> None:
2      match stmnt:
3          case ('.', *SL):
4              execute_tuple(tuple(SL), Values)
5          case (':=', var, value):
6              Values[var] = evaluate(value, Values)
7          case ('expr', expr):
8              evaluate(expr, Values)
9          case ('if', test, stmnt):
10             if evaluate_bool(test, Values):
11                 execute(stmnt, Values)
12             case ('while', test, stmnt):
13                 while evaluate_bool(test, Values):
14                     execute(stmnt, Values)
15             case _:
16                 assert False, f'{stmnt} unexpected'
17
18     def execute_tuple(Statement_List, Values={}):
19         for stmnt in Statement_List:
20             execute(stmnt, Values)

```

---

Figure 7.16: The function execute.

then `test` is a nested tuple representing a Boolean expression, while `stmnt` is a statement. In this case, the expression `test` is first evaluated using the function `evaluate`. If this evaluation yields the value `True`, then `stmnt` is executed.

5. If the command is of the form

('while', test, stmnt)

then `test` is a Boolean expression and `stmnt` is a statement. In this case, the expression `test` is first evaluated using the function `evaluate`. If this evaluation yields the value `True`, then `stmnt` is executed. Then the expression `test` is evaluated again. If the result is `False`, then the execution of the `while` loop finishes. Otherwise, `stmnt` is executed as long as the evaluation of `test` yields `True`.

Figure 7.17 shows the implementation of the function `evaluate_bool`. This function receives a boolean expression and a dictionary storing the current values of the variables as input.

- (a) If the expression to be evaluated is a Boolean expression of the form

('==', lhs, rhs)

we recursively evaluate the expressions `lhs` and `rhs` and return `True` if and only if both expressions yield the same value.

- (b) If the expression to be evaluated is a Boolean expression of the form

('<', lhs, rhs)

---

```

1  def evaluate_bool(expr, Values):
2      match expr:
3          case ('==', lhs, rhs):
4              return evaluate(lhs, Values) == evaluate(rhs, Values)
5          case ('!=', lhs, rhs):
6              return evaluate(lhs, Values) != evaluate(rhs, Values)
7          case ('<=', lhs, rhs):
8              return evaluate(lhs, Values) <= evaluate(rhs, Values)
9          case ('>=', lhs, rhs):
10             return evaluate(lhs, Values) >= evaluate(rhs, Values)
11         case ('<', lhs, rhs):
12             return evaluate(lhs, Values) < evaluate(rhs, Values)
13         case ('>', lhs, rhs):
14             return evaluate(lhs, Values) > evaluate(rhs, Values)
15         case _:
16             assert False, f'{expr} unexpected'

```

---

Figure 7.17: The evaluation of boolean expressions.

we recursively evaluate the expressions `lhs` and `rhs` and return `True` if and only if the value obtained from the evaluation of `lhs` is less than the value obtained from the evaluation of `rhs`. The remaining cases are similar.

Figure 7.18 shows the implementation of the function `evaluate`. This function receives an arithmetic expression and a dictionary storing the values of the variables as input.

- (a) If the expression to be evaluated is a number, we return this number as the result.
- (b) If the expression to be evaluated is a variable, we look up the value of this variable in the dictionary `Values` and return this value as the result.
- (c) If the expression to be evaluated is a call to the function `read`, we prompt the user to enter a natural number. We then convert the string entered by the user into an integer.
- (d) If the expression to be evaluated is a call to the function `print`, we evaluate the argument and print it. Furthermore, we return `0` since the evaluation of an expression always has to return a value.
- (e) If the expression to be evaluated is a sum of the form

`('+', lhs, rhs)`

we recursively evaluate the expressions `lhs` and `rhs` and return the sum of these values.

- (f) The evaluation of the arithmetic operators `'-'`, `'*'`, and `'/'` is analogous to the evaluation of the operator `'+'`.

```

1  def evaluate(expr, Values):
2      match expr:
3          case int():
4              return expr
5          case str():
6              return Values[expr]
7          case ('call', 'read'):
8              return int(input('Please enter a natural number: '))
9          case ('call', 'print', expr):
10             print(evaluate(expr, Values))
11             return 0;
12         case ('+', lhs, rhs):
13             return evaluate(lhs, Values) + evaluate(rhs, Values)
14         case ('-', lhs, rhs):
15             return evaluate(lhs, Values) - evaluate(rhs, Values)
16         case ('*', lhs, rhs):
17             return evaluate(lhs, Values) * evaluate(rhs, Values)
18         case ('/', lhs, rhs):
19             return evaluate(lhs, Values) / evaluate(rhs, Values)
20         case ('%', lhs, rhs):
21             return evaluate(lhs, Values) % evaluate(rhs, Values)
22         case _:
23             assert False, f'{expr} unexpected'

```

---

Figure 7.18: The evaluation of arithmetic expressions.

The Jupyter notebook `03-Interpreter.ipynb`, which is available at

<https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/Python/Chapter-07/03-Interpreter.ipynb> implements an interpreter.

**Exercise 21:**

- (a) Add `for` loops to the interpreter.
- (b) Expand the interpreter to include logical operators “`&&`” for logical *and*, “`| |`” for logical *or*, and “`!`” for *negation*. The operator “`!`” should bind strongest and the operator “`| |`” should bind weakest.
- (c) Enhance the interpreter to allow for user-defined functions.
  - A function should only have access to its parameters and those variables that are defined locally inside the function.
  - A function should always return a value using a `return` statement. In order to facilitate that a function can contain multiple `return` statements and that a `return` statement can occur anywhere in the function, use an `exception` to communicate the return value and to transfer the control flow out of the function.

Figure 7.19 on page 103 shows a simple program that implements a function to compute the factorial function. Your interpreter should be able to execute this program. Use the Jupyter notebook `Interpreter-Frame.ipynb`, which is available at

<https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/Python/Chapter-07/Interpreter-Frame.ipynb>

as a starting point for your solution. ◇

```
1  function factorial(n) {
2      if (n == 0) {
3          return 1;
4      }
5      return n * factorial(n - 1);
6  }
7
8  for (i := 2; i <= 25; i := i + 1) {
9      print(factorial(i));
10 }
```

Figure 7.19: A program to compute the factorial function.

## 7.4 Check your Understanding

- (a) Are you able to implement a simple calculator using PLY?
- (b) Would you be able to implement a PLY parser that reads propositional formulas and returns these formulas as nested tuples?
- (c) Are you able to extend the interpreter that has been discussed in this chapter?
- (d) Assume that we develop an interpreter that supports user defined functions. How can we accommodate the fact that a `return` statement can occur anywhere in a function?

# Chapter 8

## Earley Parser



Figure 8.1: The Earl of Eye in Suffolk.

In this Chapter we will discuss an efficient algorithm that takes two inputs:

1. A context-free grammar  $G = \langle V, \Sigma, R, s \rangle$  and
2. a string  $w \in \Sigma^*$ .

The algorithm decides, whether  $s \in L(G)$  holds, i.e. it checks, whether the string is a member of the language generated by the CFG  $G$ .

The algorithm that is presented next has been published in 1970 by Jay Earley [Ear70]. There is another algorithm solving the same problem, namely the [Cocke-Younger-Kasami algorithm](#), which is

also known as the [CYK algorithm](#). It has been discovered independently by John Cocke [[CS70](#)], Daniel H. Younger [[You67](#)], and Tadao Kasami [[Kas65](#)]. The CYK algorithm can only be used when the grammar has a special form, namely it has to be in [Chomsky normal form](#). As it is quite tedious to transform a given grammar into Chomsky normal form, this algorithm is not used in practical applications. In contrast, the Earley algorithm works for arbitrary context-free grammars and hence is used in practical applications. In the general case, the Earley algorithm has a complexity of  $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$  where  $n$  is the length of the string that is to be parsed. However, if the grammar is not ambiguous, the complexity is only  $\mathcal{O}(n^2)$ . Skillful implementations of Earley's algorithm even achieve a linear runtime for many practically relevant grammars. For example, Earley's algorithm has a linear complexity for both  $LL(k)$  grammars and also for  $LR(1)$  grammars. We will discuss  $LR(1)$  grammars in a later Chapter. On the contrary, the CYK algorithm always has the complexity  $\mathcal{O}(n^3)$ , which is prohibitive for practical applications.

This chapter is structured as follows:

- (a) First, we sketch the theory of Earley's algorithm.
- (b) Next, we show how this algorithm can be implemented in *Python*.

## 8.1 The Earley Algorithm

The central notion that is needed to understand Earley's algorithm is the notion of an [Earley object](#). This notion is defined below.

**Definition 22 (Earley Object)** Assume that  $G = \langle V, \Sigma, R, s \rangle$  is a context-free grammar and  $w = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n \in \Sigma^*$  is a string of length  $n$ . A pair of the form

$$\langle a \rightarrow \beta \bullet \gamma, k \rangle$$

is called an [Earley object](#) if and only if

- (a)  $(a \rightarrow \beta\gamma) \in R$  and
- (b)  $k \in \{0, 1, \dots, n\}$ . ◊

**Explanation:** An Earley describes a possible state of a parser. If a parser has to parse a string of the form  $x_1 \cdots x_n$ , then this parser will maintain  $n + 1$  sets of Earley objects. These sets are denoted as

$$Q_0, Q_1, \dots, Q_n.$$

If  $i \in \{0, 1, \dots, n\}$ , then the state  $Q_i$  contains those Earley objects that describe the state of the parser after it has parsed the tokens  $x_1, \dots, x_i$ . The interpretation of

$$\langle a \rightarrow \beta \bullet \gamma, k \rangle \in Q_j \quad \text{where } j \geq k$$

is as follows:

1. The parser tries to use the grammar rule  $a \rightarrow \beta\gamma$  to parse the variable  $a$  at the beginning of the substring  $x_{k+1} \cdots x_n$ .
  2. The parser has already parsed  $\beta$  in the substring  $x_{k+1} \cdots x_j$ , we have
- $$\beta \Rightarrow^* x_{k+1} \cdots x_j.$$
3. Hence, in order to parse the variable  $a$  the parser only needs to recognize  $\gamma$  at the beginning of the substring  $x_{j+1} \cdots x_n$ .

Earley's algorithm manages the sets  $Q_0, Q_1, \dots, Q_n$  of Earley objects. The set  $Q_j$  contains those Earley objects that contain all those states the parser could be in when it has read the prefix  $x_1 \dots x_j$ .

At the beginning of the algorithm we add a new start variable  $\hat{s}$  to the grammar. Furthermore the rule  $\hat{s} \rightarrow s$  is added to the grammar. Hence, the grammar  $G = \langle V, \Sigma, R, s \rangle$  is transformed into the **augmented grammar**

$$\hat{G} = \langle V \cup \{\hat{s}\}, \Sigma, R \cup \{\hat{s} \rightarrow s\}, \hat{s} \rangle.$$

Next, the set  $Q_0$  is defined as

$$Q_0 := \{\langle \hat{s} \rightarrow \bullet s, 0 \rangle\}.$$

The reason is that the parser should recognize the start symbol  $s$  at the beginning of the string  $x_1 \dots x_n$ . The remaining sets  $Q_j$  are initially empty for  $j = 1, \dots, n$ . These sets are extended by the following three operations:

### 1. Reading

If the set  $Q_j$  contains an Earley object of the form  $\langle a \rightarrow \beta \bullet T\gamma, k \rangle$  and  $T$  is a terminal, then the parser tries to parse the right hand side of the grammar rule  $a \rightarrow \beta T\gamma$  and, after reading  $x_{k+1} \dots x_j$  it has already recognized  $\beta$ . If this  $\beta$  is now followed by the token  $T$ , then in order to recognize  $a$  with the grammar rule  $a \rightarrow \beta T\gamma$ , the parser only has to recognize  $\gamma$  in the substring  $x_{j+2} \dots x_n$ . Hence, in this case we add the Earley object

$$\langle a \rightarrow \beta T \bullet \gamma, k \rangle$$

to the set  $Q_{j+1}$ :

$$\langle a \rightarrow \beta \bullet T\gamma, k \rangle \in Q_j \wedge x_{j+1} = T \Rightarrow Q_{j+1} := Q_{j+1} \cup \{\langle a \rightarrow \beta T \bullet \gamma, k \rangle\}.$$

### 2. Prediction

If the set  $Q_j$  contains an Earley object of the form  $\langle a \rightarrow \beta \bullet c\delta, k \rangle$  such that  $c$  is a variable, then the parser tries to recognize the substring  $c\delta$  after having parsed the substring  $x_{k+1} \dots x_j$  as  $\beta$ . Hence the parser now has to recognize the variable  $c$ . Therefore, for every rule of the form  $c \rightarrow \gamma$  that is contained in the grammar  $G$  the Earley object  $\langle c \rightarrow \bullet \gamma, j \rangle$  is added to the set  $Q_j$ :

$$\langle a \rightarrow \beta \bullet c\delta, k \rangle \in Q_j \wedge (c \rightarrow \gamma) \in R \Rightarrow Q_j := Q_j \cup \{\langle c \rightarrow \bullet \gamma, j \rangle\}.$$

### 3. Completion

If the set  $Q_i$  contains an Earley object of the form  $\langle c \rightarrow \gamma \bullet, j \rangle$  and the set  $Q_j$  contains an Earley object of the form  $\langle a \rightarrow \beta \bullet c\delta, k \rangle$ , then the parser has tried to parse the variable  $c$  after it had read the substring  $x_1 \dots x_j$  and after reading the substring  $x_{j+1} \dots x_i$  it has recognized the variable  $c$ . Therefore, the Earley object  $\langle a \rightarrow \beta c \bullet \delta, k \rangle$  is now added to the set  $Q_i$ :

$$\langle c \rightarrow \gamma \bullet, j \rangle \in Q_i \wedge \langle a \rightarrow \beta \bullet c\delta, k \rangle \in Q_j \Rightarrow Q_i := Q_i \cup \{\langle a \rightarrow \beta c \bullet \delta, k \rangle\}.$$

When trying to parse the string  $w = x_1 \dots x_n$  with the grammar  $G = \langle V, \Sigma, R, s \rangle$  Earley's algorithm works as follows:

1. The sets  $Q_i$  are initialized as follows:

$$Q_0 := \{\langle \hat{s} \rightarrow \bullet s, 0 \rangle\},$$

$$Q_i := \{\} \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, n.$$

2. After that we iterate from  $i = 0$  to  $i = n$  and perform the following operations:

- (a) The set  $Q_i$  is enlarged using [completion](#) until we find no further Earley objects.
- (b) Next we use prediction to enlarge the set  $Q_i$ . Again, this operation is performed until no new Earley objects are found.
- (c) If  $i < n$ , we read the next token and use it to initialize  $Q_{i+1}$ .

If the grammar  $G$  has  $\lambda$ -rules, i.e. if it has rules with empty right hand side of the form

$$c \rightarrow \lambda,$$

then it might happen that after applying prediction in the set  $Q_i$  we can afterwards immediately apply completion in  $Q_i$ . In this case prediction and completion have to be iterated until no further Earley objects are generated for  $Q_i$ .

3. If after termination of the algorithm the set  $Q_n$  contains the Earley object  $\langle \hat{s} \rightarrow s \bullet, 0 \rangle$ , then parsing is successful and we have shown that the string  $w = x_1 \cdots x_n$  is an element of  $L(G)$ .

**Example:** Figure 8.2 shows a simplified grammar for arithmetic expressions, consisting only of the numbers “1”, “2”, and “3” and the two operator symbols “+” and “\*”. The set  $T$  of terminals for this grammar is therefore given by

$$T = \{ "1", "2", "3", "+", "*" \}.$$

We demonstrate how the string “1+2\*3” can be parsed using this grammar and Earley’s algorithm. In the following representation, we will abbreviate the syntactic variable `expr` with the letter  $e$ , write  $p$  for `prod`, and use  $f$  as an abbreviation for `fact`.

---

```

1   expr : expr '+' prod
2       | prod
3       ;
4
5   prod : prod '*' fact
6       | fact
7       ;
8
9   fact : '1'
10      | '2'
11      | '3'
12      ;

```

---

Figure 8.2: A simplified grammar for arithmetic expressions.

1. We initialize  $Q_0$  as

$$Q_0 = \{ \langle \hat{s} \rightarrow \bullet e, 0 \rangle \}.$$

The set  $Q_1, Q_2, Q_3, Q_4$  und  $Q_5$  are initially empty. If we apply the completion operation to the set  $Q_0$ , we find no new Earley objects.

Next, we apply the prediction operation to the Earley object  $\langle \hat{s} \rightarrow \bullet e, 0 \rangle$ . This initially adds the following two Earley objects to the set  $Q_0$ :

$$\langle e \rightarrow \bullet e " + " p, 0 \rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \langle e \rightarrow \bullet p, 0 \rangle$$

We can apply the prediction operation once more to the Earley object  $\langle e \rightarrow \bullet p, 0 \rangle$ , which results in two new Earley objects:

$$\langle p \rightarrow \bullet p " * " f, 0 \rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \langle p \rightarrow \bullet f, 0 \rangle$$

Applying the prediction operation to the Earley object  $\langle p \rightarrow \bullet f, 0 \rangle$ , we finally add the following Earley objects to  $Q_0$ :

$$\langle f \rightarrow \bullet "1", 0 \rangle, \quad \langle f \rightarrow \bullet "2", 0 \rangle, \quad \text{and} \quad \langle f \rightarrow \bullet "3", 0 \rangle$$

In total,  $Q_0$  now contains the following Earley objects:

- (a)  $\langle \hat{s} \rightarrow \bullet e, 0 \rangle$ ,
- (b)  $\langle e \rightarrow \bullet e " + " p, 0 \rangle$ ,
- (c)  $\langle e \rightarrow \bullet p, 0 \rangle$ ,
- (d)  $\langle p \rightarrow \bullet p " * " f, 0 \rangle$ ,
- (e)  $\langle p \rightarrow \bullet f, 0 \rangle$ ,
- (f)  $\langle f \rightarrow \bullet "1", 0 \rangle$ ,
- (g)  $\langle f \rightarrow \bullet "2", 0 \rangle$ ,
- (h)  $\langle f \rightarrow \bullet "3", 0 \rangle$ .

Next, we apply the scanning operation to  $Q_0$ . Since the first character of the string to be parsed is “1,” the set  $Q_1$  takes the following form:

$$Q_1 = \{ \langle f \rightarrow "1" \bullet, 0 \rangle \}$$

2. Now, we set  $i = 1$  and first apply the completion operation to  $Q_1$ . Based on the Earley object  $\langle f \rightarrow "1" \bullet, 0 \rangle$  in  $Q_1$ , we look for an Earley object in  $Q_0$  where the marker “ $\bullet$ ” is positioned before the variable  $F$ . We find the Earley object  $\langle p \rightarrow \bullet f, 0 \rangle$ . Therefore, we add the following Earley object to  $Q_1$ :

$$\langle p \rightarrow f \bullet, 0 \rangle$$

We can then apply the completion operation again. After repeated applications,  $Q_1$  contains the following Earley objects:

- (a)  $\langle p \rightarrow f \bullet, 0 \rangle$ ,
- (b)  $\langle p \rightarrow p \bullet " * " f, 0 \rangle$ ,
- (c)  $\langle e \rightarrow p \bullet, 0 \rangle$ ,
- (d)  $\langle e \rightarrow e \bullet " + " p, 0 \rangle$ ,

$$(e) \langle \hat{s} \rightarrow e \bullet, 0 \rangle.$$

Next, we apply the prediction operation to these Earley objects. However, since the marker “•” in none of the Earley objects in  $Q_i$  precedes a variable, no new Earley objects are generated.

Finally, we apply the scanning operation to  $Q_1$ . Since the character “+” is at position 2 in the string “1+2\*3” and  $Q_1$  contains the Earley object

$$\langle e \rightarrow e \bullet " + " p, 0 \rangle,$$

we add the following Earley object to  $Q_2$ :

$$\langle e \rightarrow e " + " \bullet p, 0 \rangle$$

3. Next, we set  $i = 2$  and first apply the completion operation to  $Q_2$ . At this point, we have

$$Q_2 = \{ \langle e \rightarrow e " + " \bullet p, 0 \rangle \}.$$

Since the marker “•” in the only Earley object present here is not at the end of the grammar rule, the completion operation does not yield any new Earley objects in this step.

Next, we apply the prediction operation to  $Q_2$ . Since the marker precedes the variable  $p$ , we first find the following two Earley objects:

$$\langle p \rightarrow \bullet f, 2 \rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \langle p \rightarrow \bullet p " * " f, 2 \rangle.$$

Since in the first Earley object the marker precedes the variable  $f$ , the prediction operation can be applied once more, yielding the following additional Earley objects:

- (a)  $\langle f \rightarrow \bullet "1", 2 \rangle$ ,
- (b)  $\langle f \rightarrow \bullet "2", 2 \rangle$ ,
- (c)  $\langle f \rightarrow \bullet "3", 2 \rangle$ .

Finally, we apply the scanning operation to  $Q_2$ . Since the third character of the string “1+2\*3” is the digit “2,”  $Q_3$  now takes the form

$$Q_3 = \{ \langle f \rightarrow "2" \bullet, 2 \rangle \}.$$

4. We set  $i = 3$  and apply the completion operation to  $Q_3$ . This adds

$$\langle p \rightarrow f \bullet, 2 \rangle$$

to  $Q_3$ . Here, we can apply the completion operation once more. Through iterative application of the completion operation, we additionally obtain the following Earley objects:

- (a)  $\langle p \rightarrow p \bullet " * " f, 2 \rangle$ ,
- (b)  $\langle e \rightarrow e " + " p \bullet, 0 \rangle$ ,
- (c)  $\langle e \rightarrow e \bullet " + " p, 0 \rangle$ ,
- (d)  $\langle \hat{s} \rightarrow e \bullet, 0 \rangle$ .

Finally, we apply the scanning operation. Since the next character to be read is the symbol “\*,” we get

$$Q_4 = \{\langle p \rightarrow p^* \bullet f, 2 \rangle\}.$$

5. We set  $i = 4$ . The completion operation does not yield any new Earley objects. The prediction operation provides the following Earley objects:

- (a)  $\langle f \rightarrow \bullet 1, 4 \rangle$ ,
- (b)  $\langle f \rightarrow \bullet 2, 4 \rangle$ ,
- (c)  $\langle f \rightarrow \bullet 3, 4 \rangle$ .

Since the next character is the digit “3,” the scanning operation for  $Q_5$  results in:

$$Q_5 = \{\langle f \rightarrow 3 \bullet, 4 \rangle\}.$$

6. We set  $i = 5$ . The completion operation sequentially provides the following Earley objects:

- (a)  $\langle p \rightarrow p^* f \bullet, 2 \rangle$ ,
- (b)  $\langle e \rightarrow e^+ p \bullet, 0 \rangle$ ,
- (c)  $\langle p \rightarrow p \bullet^* f, 2 \rangle$ ,
- (d)  $\langle e \rightarrow e \bullet^+ p, 0 \rangle$
- (e)  $\langle \hat{s} \rightarrow e \bullet, 0 \rangle$ .

Since the set  $Q_5$  contains the Earley object  $\langle \hat{s} \rightarrow e \bullet, 0 \rangle$ , we can conclude that the string “1+2\*3” indeed belongs to the language generated by the given grammar.

**Exercise 22:** Use Earley’s algorithm to show that the string “1\*2+3” belongs to the language of the grammar shown in Figure 8.2. ◇

## 8.2 Implementing Earley’s Algorithm in Python

The Jupyter notebook

<https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/ANTLR4-Python/Earley-Parser/Earley-Parser.ipynb>

contains an implementation of Earley’s algorithm.

## 8.3 Check Your Understandig

- (a) How is an Earley object defined, and how are the components of an Earley object interpreted?
- (b) How does the scanning operation work in Earley's algorithm?
- (c) How does the prediction operation work in Earley's algorithm?
- (d) How does the completion operation work in Earley's algorithm?
- (e) Outline Earley's algorithm for the case where the grammar contains no  $\varepsilon$ -rules.
- (f) What is the complexity of Earley's algorithm in the general case?
- (g) What is the complexity of Earley's algorithm in the case that the grammar is not ambiguous?

# Chapter 9

## Bottom-up Parsers

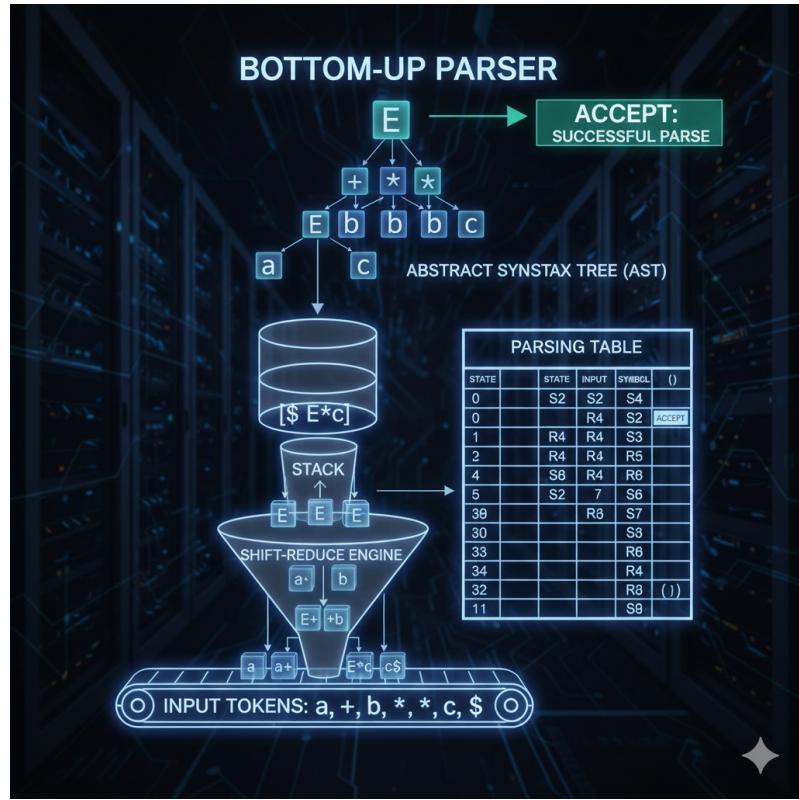


Figure 9.1: An artist's rendition of a Bottom-Up Parser.

In constructing a parser, there are generally two approaches: [top-down](#) and [bottom-up](#). We have already discussed the top-down approach. In this chapter, we will explain the bottom-up approach.

- In the next section, we present the general concept underlying a [bottom-up parser](#).
- In the following section, we show how bottom-up parsers can be implemented and introduce [shift-reduce parsers](#) as one possible implementation.

A *shift-reduce parser* operates with a table that specifies how the parser should process inputs in a given state.

- (c) We then develop the theory of how such a table can be meaningfully filled with information in the following section: First, we discuss the [SLR parsers](#) (simple LR parsers), which are the simplest class of shift-reduce parsers.
- (d) Unfortunately, the concept of SLR parsers is not powerful enough for practical use. Therefore, we refine this concept to obtain the class of [canonical LR parsers](#).
- (e) As the tables for LR parsers often become large, we simplify these tables slightly and then obtain the concept of LALR parsers, which in terms of power lies between the concept of SLR parsers and that of LR parsers.

In the following chapter, we will discuss the parser generator [PLY](#), which is an LALR parser.

## 9.1 Bottom-Up-Parser

The parsers that we have implemented in the Chapter 6 without the help of any tool are known as [top-down parsers](#): starting from the start symbol of the grammar, they attempt to parse a given input by applying various grammar rules. In contrast, the parsers generated by [PLY](#) are [bottom-up parsers](#). In such parsers, the idea is to start with the string to be parsed and group terminals based on the right-hand sides of the grammar rules.

As an example, consider parsing the string “1 + 2 \* 3” using the grammar defined by the following rules:

$$\begin{aligned} e &\rightarrow e "+" p \mid p \\ p &\rightarrow p "*" f \mid f \\ f &\rightarrow "1" \mid "2" \mid "3" \end{aligned}$$

To parse this string, we look for substrings that correspond to the right-hand sides of grammar rules, scanning the string from left to right. This way, we try to construct a parse tree in reverse from bottom to top:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 + 2 * 3 &\Leftarrow f + 2 * 3 \quad (\text{rule: } f \rightarrow "1") \\ &\Leftarrow p + 2 * 3 \quad (\text{rule: } p \rightarrow f) \\ &\Leftarrow e + 2 * 3 \quad (\text{rule: } e \rightarrow p) \\ &\Leftarrow e + f * 3 \quad (\text{rule: } f \rightarrow "2") \\ &\Leftarrow e + p * 3 \quad (\text{rule: } p \rightarrow f) \\ &\Leftarrow e + p * f \quad (\text{rule: } f \rightarrow "3") \\ &\Leftarrow e + p \quad (\text{rule: } p \rightarrow p "*" f) \\ &\Leftarrow e \quad (\text{rule: } e \rightarrow e "+" p) \end{aligned}$$

In the first step, we used the grammar rule  $f \rightarrow "1"$  to replace the string “1” with  $f$ , thus obtaining the string “f + 2 \* 3”. In the second step, we used the rule  $p \rightarrow f$  to replace  $f$  with  $p$ . In this manner, we ultimately traced the original string “1 + 2 \* 3” back to  $e$ . At this point, we can make two observations:

- (a) In our approach, we always replace the leftmost substring that can be replaced when we want to trace the initially given string back to the start symbol of the grammar.
- (b) If we write down the derivation that we have constructed backwards, we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}
 e &\Rightarrow e + p \\
 &\Rightarrow e + p * f \\
 &\Rightarrow e + p * 3 \\
 &\Rightarrow e + f * 3 \\
 &\Rightarrow e + 2 * 3 \\
 &\Rightarrow p + 2 * 3 \\
 &\Rightarrow f + 2 * 3 \\
 &\Rightarrow 1 + 2 * 3
 \end{aligned}$$

We see here that in this derivation, the rightmost syntactic variable is always the one being replaced. Such a derivation is referred to as a [rightmost derivation](#).

In contrast, the derivations produced by a [top-down parser](#) are exactly the opposite: there, the leftmost syntactic variable is always replaced. Therefore, the derivations created with such a parser are called [leftmost derivations](#).

The above two observations are the reason why the parsers discussed in this chapter are referred to as [LR Parsers](#). The **L** stands for [left to right](#) and describes the approach of always scanning the string from left to right, while the **R** stands for [reverse rightmost derivation](#) and indicates that such parsers construct a rightmost derivation in reverse.

In the implementation of an LR parser, two questions arise:

1. Which substring do we replace?
2. Which grammar rules should we use in the process?

Answering these questions is generally non-trivial. Although we always scan the strings from left to right, it is not immediately clear which substring we should replace, as the potentially replaceable substrings can overlap. Consider, for example, the intermediate result

$$e + p * 3,$$

that we obtained in the fifth step above. Here, we could replace the substring “p” using the rule

$$e \rightarrow p$$

with “e”. Then, we would obtain the string

$$e + e * 3.$$

The only reductions we can now perform, via the intermediate results  $e + e * f$  and  $e + e * p$ , lead to the string

$$e + e * e,$$

which then cannot be reduced any further with the grammar given above. The answers to the above questions, which substring we replace and which rule we use, require a fair amount of theory, which we will develop in the following sections.

## 9.2 Shift-Reduce-Parser

[Shift-reduce parsing](#) is one way to implement bottom up parsing. Assume a grammar  $G = \langle V, T, R, s \rangle$  is given. A [shift-reduce parser](#) is defined as a 4-Tuple

$$P = \langle Q, q_0, \text{action}, \text{goto} \rangle$$

where

1.  $Q$  is the set of [states](#) of the shift-reduce parser.

At first, states are purely abstract.

2.  $q_0 \in Q$  is the start state.

3.  $\text{action}$  is a function taking two arguments. The first argument is a state  $q \in Q$  and the second argument is a terminal  $t \in T$ . The result of this function is an element from the set

$$\text{Action} := \{\langle \text{shift}, q \rangle \mid q \in Q\} \cup \{\langle \text{reduce}, r \rangle \mid r \in R\} \cup \{\text{accept}\} \cup \{\text{error}\}.$$

Here `shift`, `reduce`, `accept`, and `error` are strings that serve to distinguish the different kinds of result of the function `action`. Then the signature of the function `action` is

$$\text{action} : Q \times T \rightarrow \text{Action}.$$

4.  $\text{goto}$  is a function that takes a state  $q \in Q$  and a syntactical variable  $v \in V$  and computes a new state. The signature of `goto` is

$$\text{goto} : Q \times V \rightarrow Q.$$

To describe the algorithm implemented in a shift-reduce parser, we first describe the data structures that are used by this algorithm:

- (a) *States* is a stack of states from the set  $Q$ :

$$\text{States} \in \text{Stack}[Q].$$

- (b) *Symbols* is a stack of grammar symbols, i.e. this stack contains both terminals and syntactical variables:

$$\text{Symbols} \in \text{Stack}[T \cup V].$$

In order to simplify the exposition of shift-reduce parsing we assume that the set  $T$  of terminals contains the special symbol “EoF” (short for [end of file](#)). This symbol is assumed to occur at the end of the input string but does not occur elsewhere.

In order to understand how a shift-reduce parser works we introduce the notion of a [parser configuration](#). A parser configuration is a triple of the form

$$\langle \text{States}, \text{Symbols}, \text{Tokens} \rangle$$

where *States* and *Symbols* are the aforementioned stacks of states and grammar symbols, while *Tokens* is the rest of the tokens from the input string that have not been processed. The stack *States* starts with the start state  $q_0$ , i.e. initially we have

$$\text{States} = [q_0].$$

The length of *States* is always the length of the stack *Symbols* plus one:

$$\text{length}(\text{States}) = \text{length}(\text{Symbols}) + 1.$$

If the input string that is to be parsed has the form

$$[t_1, \dots, t_n]$$

and we have already processed the first part  $[t_1, \dots, t_k]$  of the input string to produce the symbols

$$[X_1, \dots, X_m],$$

while  $[t_{k+1}, \dots, t_n]$  is the part of the input string that still needs to be processed, then we know that by construction of our parser we have

$$X_1 \cdots X_m \Rightarrow^* t_1 \cdots t_k$$

and, furthermore, the parts of the parser configuration have the form

$$\text{States} = [q_0, q_1, \dots, q_m], \quad \text{Symbols} = [X_1, \dots, X_m], \quad \text{and} \quad \text{Tokens} = [t_{k+1}, \dots, t_n, \text{EOF}],$$

and the parser configuration  $\langle \text{States}, \text{Symbols}, \text{Tokens} \rangle$  is written as

$$q_0, q_1, \dots, q_m \mid X_1, \dots, X_m \mid t_{k+1}, \dots, t_n, \text{EOF}.$$

Shift-reduce parsing starts out with the configuration

$$q_0 \mid \mid t_1, \dots, t_n, \text{EOF}.$$

Therefore, initially the stack *States* contains only the start symbol, the stack *Symbols* is empty, and the list *Tokens* consists of the sequence of tokens that need to be parsed. Then, parsing proceeds iteratively. If the current configuration is

$$q_0, q_1, \dots, q_m \mid X_1, \dots, X_m \mid t_{k+1}, \dots, t_n, \text{EOF},$$

then there is a case distinction according to the value of  $\text{action}(q_m, t_{k+1})$ .

- (a) If  $\text{action}(q_m, t_{k+1}) = \text{error}$ , then we know that the given string  $t_1 \cdots, t_n$  is not generated by the given grammar and parsing is aborted with an error message.
- (b) If  $\text{action}(q_m, t_{k+1}) = \text{accept}$ , then we must have  $k = n$  and hence  $t_{k+1} = t_{n+1} = \text{EOF}$  and we also must have  $X_1, \dots, X_m = S$ . In this case, we have reduced the string  $t_1 \cdots t_n$  to the start symbol  $S$  of the given grammar and parsing finishes with success.

- (c) If  $\text{action}(q_m, t_{k+1}) = \langle \text{shift}, q \rangle$ , then the current configuration is changed into the new configuration

$$q_0, q_1, \dots, q_m, q \mid X_1, \dots, X_m, t_{k+1} \mid t_{k+2}, \dots, t_n, \text{EOF},$$

i.e. the next token  $t_{k+1}$  is moved from the unread input to the top of the symbol stack and the new state  $q$  is pushed onto the stack *States*.

- (d) If  $\text{action}(q_m, t_{k+1}) = \langle \text{reduce}, r \rangle$ , where  $r$  is a grammar rule, then the grammar rule  $r$  must have the form

$$a \rightarrow X_{m-l} \cdots X_m,$$

i.e. the right hand side of the grammar rule matches the end of the stack *Symbols*. In this case, the symbols stack is reduced with this grammar rule, i.e. the symbols  $X_{m-l}, \dots, X_m$  are replaced by  $a$ . Furthermore, in the stack *States* the states  $q_{m-l} \cdots q_m$  are replaced by the state  $\text{goto}(q_{m-l-1}, a)$ . Therefore, the configuration changes as follows:

$$q_0, q_1, \dots, q_{m-l-1}, \text{goto}(q_{m-l-1}, a) \mid X_1, \dots, X_{m-l-1}, a \mid t_{k+1}, \dots, t_n, \text{EOF}.$$

Figure 9.2 on page 117 shows the class `ShiftReduceParser`, which maintains two dictionaries.

- (a) `mActionTable` stores the function  $\text{action} : Q \times T \rightarrow \text{Action}$ .
- (b) `mGotoTable` stores the function  $\text{goto} : Q \times V \rightarrow Q$ .

---

```

1  class ShiftReduceParser():
2      def __init__(self, actionTable, gotoTable):
3          self.mActionTable = actionTable
4          self.mGotoTable   = gotoTable

```

---

Figure 9.2: Implementation of a shift-reduce parser in *Python*


---

```

1  def parse(self, TL):
2      index      = 0           # points to next token
3      Symbols   = []          # stack of symbols
4      States    = ['s0']       # stack of states, s0 is start state
5      TL        += ['EOF']    # token list
6      while True:
7          q = States[-1]
8          t = TL[index]
9          # undefined table entries are interpreted as 'error'
10         match self.mActionTable.get((q, t), 'error'):
11             case 'error':
12                 return False
13             case 'accept':
14                 return True
15             case 'shift', s:
16                 Symbols += [t]
17                 States += [s]
18                 index += 1
19             case 'reduce', rule:
20                 head, body = rule
21                 n         = len(body)
22                 Symbols = Symbols[:-n]
23                 States  = States[:-n]
24                 Symbols = Symbols + [head]
25                 state   = States[-1]
26                 States += [ self.mGotoTable[state, head] ]

```

---

Figure 9.3: Implementation of a shift-reduce parser in *Python*

Figure 9.3 on page 117 shows the implementation of the method `parse` that implements **shift-reduce parsing**. This method assumes that the function `action` is coded as a dictionary that is stored in the member variable `mActionTable`. The function `goto` is also represented as a dictionary. It is stored in the member variable `mGotoTable`. The method `parse` is called with one argument `TL`. This is the list of tokens that have to be parsed. We append the special token “`EoF`” at the end of this list.

The invocation `parse( $TL$ )` returns `True` if the token list  $TL$  can be parsed successfully and `False` otherwise. The implementation of `parse` works as follows:

1. The variable `index` points to the next token in the token list that is to be read. Therefore, this variable is initialized to 0.
2. The variable `Symbols` stores the stack of symbols. The top of this stack is at the end of this list. Initially, the stack of symbols is empty.
3. The variable `States` is the stack of states. The start state is assumed to be the state “ $s0$ ”. Therefore this stack is initialized to contain only this state.
4. The main loop of the parser
  - sets the variable  $q$  to the current state,
  - initializes  $t$  to the next token, and then
  - looks up the appropriate action in the action table.

What happens next depends on this value of  $\text{action}(q, t)$ .

- (a)  $\text{action}(q, t) = \text{error}$ .

In this case the parser has found a syntax error and returns `False`.

- (b)  $\text{action}(q, t) = \text{accept}$ .

In this case parsing is successful and therefore the function returns `True`.

- (c)  $\text{action}(q, t) = \langle \text{shift}, s \rangle$ .

In this case, the token  $t$  is pushed onto the symbol stack in line 16, while the state  $s$  is pushed onto the stack of states. Furthermore, the variable `index` is incremented to point to the next unread token.

- (d)  $\text{action}(q, t) = \langle \text{reduce}, A \rightarrow X_1 \cdots X_n \rangle$ .

In this case, we use the grammar rule

$$r = (A \rightarrow X_1 \cdots X_n)$$

to reduce the symbol stack. The variable `head` represents the left hand side  $A$  of this rule, while the list  $[X_1, \dots, X_n]$  is represented by the variable `body`.

In this case, it can be shown that the symbols  $X_1, \dots, X_n$  are on top of the symbol stack. As we are going to reduce the symbol stack with the rule  $r$ , we remove these  $n$  symbols from the symbol stack and replace them with the variable  $A$ .

Furthermore, we have to remove  $n$  states from the stack of states. After that, we set the variable `state` to the state that is on top of the stack of states after we have removed  $n$  states.

Next, the new state `goto(state, A)` is put on top of the stack of states in line 26.

In order to make the method `parse` work we have to provide an implementation of the functions `action` and `goto`. The tables 9.1 and 9.2 show these functions for the grammar given in Figure 9.4. For this grammar, there are 16 different states, which have been baptized as  $s_0, s_1, \dots, s_{15}$ . The tables use two different abbreviations:

1.  $\langle \text{shft}, s_i \rangle$  is short for  $\langle \text{shift}, s_i \rangle$ .

2.  $\langle rdc, r_i \rangle$  is short for  $\langle \text{reduce}, r_i \rangle$ , where  $r_i$  denotes the grammar rule number  $i$ . Here, we have numbered the rules as follows:

- (a)  $r_1 = (\text{expr} \rightarrow \text{expr} \text{ "+" product})$
- (b)  $r_2 = (\text{expr} \rightarrow \text{expr} \text{ "-" product})$
- (c)  $r_3 = (\text{expr} \rightarrow \text{product})$
- (d)  $r_4 = (\text{product} \rightarrow \text{product} \text{ "*" factor})$
- (e)  $r_5 = (\text{product} \rightarrow \text{product} \text{ "/" factor})$
- (f)  $r_6 = (\text{product} \rightarrow \text{factor})$
- (g)  $r_7 = (\text{factor} \rightarrow (" \text{expr} "))$
- (h)  $r_8 = (\text{factor} \rightarrow \text{NUMBER})$

The corresponding grammar is shown in Figure 9.4. The definition of the grammar rules and the coding of the functions *action* and *goto* is shown in the Figures 9.5, 9.7, and 9.6 on the following pages. Of course, at present we do not have any idea how the functions *action* and *goto* are computed. This requires some theory that will be presented in the next section.

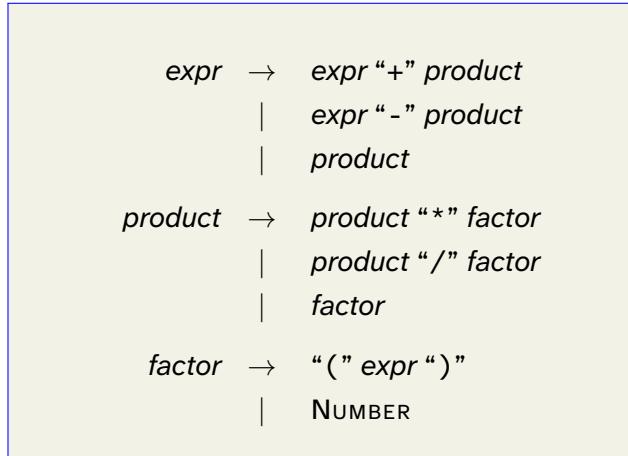


Figure 9.4: A grammar for arithmetical expressions.

State	EoF	+	-	*	/	(	)	NUMBER
$s_0$						$\langle shft, s_5 \rangle$		$\langle shft, s_2 \rangle$
$s_1$	$\langle rdc, r_6 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_6 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_6 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_6 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_6 \rangle$		$\langle rdc, r_6 \rangle$	
$s_2$	$\langle rdc, r_8 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_8 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_8 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_8 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_8 \rangle$		$\langle rdc, r_8 \rangle$	
$s_3$	$\langle rdc, r_3 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_3 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_3 \rangle$	$\langle shft, s_{12} \rangle$	$\langle shft, s_{11} \rangle$		$\langle rdc, r_3 \rangle$	
$s_4$	accept	$\langle shft, s_8 \rangle$	$\langle shft, s_9 \rangle$					
$s_5$						$\langle shft, s_5 \rangle$		$\langle shft, s_2 \rangle$
$s_6$		$\langle shft, s_8 \rangle$	$\langle shft, s_9 \rangle$				$\langle shft, s_7 \rangle$	
$s_7$	$\langle rdc, r_7 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_7 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_7 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_7 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_7 \rangle$		$\langle rdc, r_7 \rangle$	
$s_8$						$\langle shft, s_5 \rangle$		$\langle shft, s_2 \rangle$
$s_9$						$\langle shft, s_5 \rangle$		$\langle shft, s_2 \rangle$
$s_{10}$	$\langle rdc, r_2 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_2 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_2 \rangle$	$\langle shft, s_{12} \rangle$	$\langle shft, s_{11} \rangle$		$\langle rdc, r_2 \rangle$	
$s_{11}$						$\langle shft, s_5 \rangle$		$\langle shft, s_2 \rangle$
$s_{12}$						$\langle shft, s_5 \rangle$		$\langle shft, s_2 \rangle$
$s_{13}$	$\langle rdc, r_4 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_4 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_4 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_4 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_4 \rangle$		$\langle rdc, r_4 \rangle$	
$s_{14}$	$\langle rdc, r_5 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_5 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_5 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_5 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_5 \rangle$		$\langle rdc, r_5 \rangle$	
$s_{15}$	$\langle rdc, r_1 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_1 \rangle$	$\langle rdc, r_1 \rangle$	$\langle shft, s_{12} \rangle$	$\langle shft, s_{11} \rangle$		$\langle rdc, r_1 \rangle$	

Table 9.1: The function  $action()$ .

State	expr	product	factor
$s_0$	$s_4$	$s_3$	$s_1$
$s_1$			
$s_2$			
$s_3$			
$s_4$			
$s_5$	$s_6$	$s_3$	$s_1$
$s_6$			
$s_7$			
$s_8$		$s_{15}$	$s_1$
$s_9$		$s_{10}$	$s_1$
$s_{10}$			
$s_{11}$			$s_{14}$
$s_{12}$			$s_{13}$
$s_{13}$			
$s_{14}$			
$s_{15}$			

Table 9.2: The function  $goto()$ .

---

```

1   r1 = ('e', ('e', '+', 'p'))
2   r2 = ('e', ('e', '-', 'p'))
3   r3 = ('e', ('p'))
4
5   r4 = ('p', ('p', '*', 'f'))
6   r5 = ('p', ('p', '/', 'f'))
7   r6 = ('p', ('f'))
8
9   r7 = ('f', ('( ', 'e', ') ')) 
10  r8 = ('f', ('NUMBER', ))

```

---

Figure 9.5: Grammar rules coded in *Python*.

---

```

1  gotoTable := {};
2
3  gotoTable["s0", "e"] := "s4";
4  gotoTable["s0", "p"] := "s3";
5  gotoTable["s0", "f"] := "s1";
6
7  gotoTable["s5", "e"] := "s6";
8  gotoTable["s5", "p"] := "s3";
9  gotoTable["s5", "f"] := "s1";
10
11 gotoTable["s8", "p"] := "s15";
12 gotoTable["s8", "f"] := "s1";
13
14 gotoTable["s9", "p"] := "s10";
15 gotoTable["s9", "f"] := "s1";
16
17 gotoTable["s11", "f"] := "s14";
18 gotoTable["s12", "f"] := "s13";

```

---

Figure 9.6: Goto table coded in PYTHON.

---

```

actionTable = {}

actionTable[s0, '('] = (shft, s5)    actionTable[s8, '('] = (shft, s5)
actionTable[s0, NBR] = (shft, s2)     actionTable[s8, NBR] = (shft, s2)

actionTable[s1, EOF] = (rdc, r6)      actionTable[s9, '('] = (shft, s5)
actionTable[s1, '+'] = (rdc, r6)      actionTable[s9, NBR] = (shft, s2)
actionTable[s1, '-'] = (rdc, r6)      actionTable[s0, EOF] = (rdc, r2)
actionTable[s1, '*'] = (rdc, r6)      actionTable[s0, '+'] = (rdc, r2)
actionTable[s1, '/') = (rdc, r6)      actionTable[s0, '-'] = (rdc, r2)
actionTable[s1, ')'] = (rdc, r6)      actionTable[s0, '*' ] = (shft, s2)
                                         actionTable[s10, '/') = (shft, s11)
                                         actionTable[s10, ')'] = (rdc, r2)

actionTable[s2, EOF] = (rdc, r8)      actionTable[s11, '('] = (shft, s5)
actionTable[s2, '+'] = (rdc, r8)      actionTable[s11, NBR] = (shft, s2)
actionTable[s2, '-'] = (rdc, r8)      actionTable[s12, '('] = (shft, s5)
actionTable[s2, '*'] = (rdc, r8)      actionTable[s12, NBR] = (shft, s2)
actionTable[s2, '/') = (rdc, r8)      actionTable[s13, EOF] = (rdc, r4)
actionTable[s2, ')'] = (rdc, r8)      actionTable[s13, '+'] = (rdc, r4)
                                         actionTable[s13, '-'] = (rdc, r4)
                                         actionTable[s13, '*' ] = (rdc, r4)
                                         actionTable[s13, '/') = (rdc, r4)
                                         actionTable[s13, ')'] = (rdc, r4)

actionTable[s3, EOF] = (rdc, r3)      actionTable[s14, EOF] = (rdc, r5)
actionTable[s3, '+'] = (rdc, r3)      actionTable[s14, '+'] = (rdc, r5)
actionTable[s3, '-'] = (rdc, r3)      actionTable[s14, '-'] = (rdc, r5)
actionTable[s3, '*'] = (shft, s12)    actionTable[s14, '*' ] = (rdc, r5)
actionTable[s3, '/') = (shft, s11)    actionTable[s14, '/') = (rdc, r5)
actionTable[s3, ')'] = (rdc, r3)      actionTable[s14, ')'] = (rdc, r5)

actionTable[s4, EOF] = 'accept'       actionTable[s15, EOF] = (rdc, r1)
actionTable[s4, '+'] = (shft, s8)     actionTable[s15, '+'] = (rdc, r1)
actionTable[s4, '-'] = (shft, s9)     actionTable[s15, '-'] = (rdc, r1)
                                         actionTable[s15, '*' ] = (shft, s12)
                                         actionTable[s15, '/') = (shft, s11)
                                         actionTable[s15, ')'] = (rdc, r1)

actionTable[s5, '('] = (shft, s5)     actionTable[s15, ')'] = (rdc, r1)
actionTable[s5, NBR] = (shft, s2)     actionTable[s15, '+'] = (rdc, r1)
                                         actionTable[s15, '-'] = (rdc, r1)
                                         actionTable[s15, '*' ] = (shft, s12)
                                         actionTable[s15, '/') = (shft, s11)
                                         actionTable[s15, ')'] = (rdc, r1)

actionTable[s6, '+'] = (shft, s8)     actionTable[s15, ')'] = (rdc, r1)
actionTable[s6, '-'] = (shft, s9)     actionTable[s15, '+'] = (rdc, r1)
actionTable[s6, ')'] = (shft, s7)     actionTable[s15, '-'] = (rdc, r1)
                                         actionTable[s15, '*' ] = (shft, s12)
                                         actionTable[s15, '/') = (shft, s11)
                                         actionTable[s15, ')'] = (rdc, r1)

actionTable[s7, EOF] = (rdc, r7)      actionTable[s15, ')'] = (rdc, r1)
actionTable[s7, '+'] = (rdc, r7)      actionTable[s15, '+'] = (rdc, r1)
actionTable[s7, '-'] = (rdc, r7)      actionTable[s15, '-'] = (rdc, r1)
actionTable[s7, '*'] = (rdc, r7)      actionTable[s15, '*' ] = (shft, s12)
actionTable[s7, '/') = (rdc, r7)      actionTable[s15, '/') = (shft, s11)
actionTable[s7, ')'] = (rdc, r7)      actionTable[s15, ')'] = (rdc, r1)

```

---

Figure 9.7: The action table for our shift/reduce parser.

## 9.3 SLR-Parser

In this section, we demonstrate how to compute the functions

$$\text{action} : Q \times T \rightarrow \text{Action} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{goto} : Q \times V \rightarrow Q$$

that have been used in the last section to build a shift-reduce parser for a given context-free grammar  $G$ . For this purpose, we first clarify what information the states contained in the set  $Q$  should hold. We will define these states in such a way that they contain information about which rule the shift-reduce parser is attempting to apply, which part of the right hand side of a grammar rule has already been recognized, and what are the symbols that are still expected. To this end, we define the concept of a **marked rule**. Unfortunately, the original English literature [Knu65] uses the rather meaningless term “item” instead of the notion of a *marked rule*.

**Definition 23 (Marked Rule)** A **marked rule** of a context-free grammar  $G = \langle V, T, R, s \rangle$  is a triple

$$\langle a, \beta, \gamma \rangle,$$

such that

$$(a \rightarrow \beta\gamma) \in R.$$

A marked rule of the form  $\langle a, \beta, \gamma \rangle$  is written as

$$a \rightarrow \beta \bullet \gamma.$$

◊

The marked rule  $a \rightarrow \beta \bullet \gamma$  indicates that the parser is trying to parse an  $a$  with the rule  $a \rightarrow \beta\gamma$ , having already seen  $\beta$  and is next attempting to recognize  $\gamma$ . The symbol  $\bullet$  thus marks the part of the right side of the rule that we have already read. Now the idea is to represent a state of an SLR parser as a **set of marked rules**. To illustrate this idea, let’s consider a specific example: we start with the grammar for arithmetic expressions shown in Figure 9.4 on page 119. We extend this grammar by a new start symbol  $\hat{s}$  and the rule

$$\hat{s} \rightarrow \text{expr} \$$$

where the symbol “\$” is used to denote EoF, i.e. the end of the input. The start state clearly contains the marked rule

$$\hat{s} \rightarrow \lambda \bullet \text{expr} \$,$$

since at the beginning we are trying to derive the start symbol  $\hat{s}$ . The component  $\lambda$  indicates that we have not yet processed anything. In addition to this marked rule, the start state must also contain the marked rules

1.  $\text{expr} \rightarrow \lambda \bullet \text{expr}' +' \text{product},$
2.  $\text{expr} \rightarrow \lambda \bullet \text{expr}' -' \text{product} \quad \text{and}$
3.  $\text{expr} \rightarrow \lambda \bullet \text{product}$

because, for example, it may be necessary to use the rule

$$\text{expr} \rightarrow \text{expr}' +' \text{product}$$

to derive the sought  $\text{expr}$ . Similarly, it could be that instead we need to use the rule

$$\text{expr} \rightarrow \text{product}$$

This explains why we must include the marked rule

$$\text{expr} \rightarrow \lambda \bullet \text{product}$$

in the start state, because at the beginning we cannot yet know which rule we will need, so the start state must contain all these rules. Once we have added the marked rule

$$\text{expr} \rightarrow \lambda \bullet \text{product}$$

to the start state, we see that we might need to read a *product* next. Therefore, the start state also contains the following marked rules<sup>1</sup>:

4.  $\text{product} \rightarrow \bullet \text{product} \star \star \text{factor},$
5.  $\text{product} \rightarrow \bullet \text{product} \star / \text{factor},$
6.  $\text{product} \rightarrow \bullet \text{factor},$

Now, the sixth rule indicates that we might first read a *factor*. Therefore, we add the following two marked rules to the start state:

7.  $\text{factor} \rightarrow \bullet (' \text{expr} ') ,$
8.  $\text{factor} \rightarrow \bullet \text{NUMBER}.$

Overall, we see that the start state consists of a set of 8 marked rules. The system shown above, for deriving further rules from a given rule, is formalized in the concept of the ***closure*** of a set of marked rules.

**Definition 24 (*closure*( $\mathcal{M}$ ))** Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a set of marked rules. Then we define the ***closure*** of this set as the smallest set  $\mathcal{K}$  of marked rules such that:

1.  $\mathcal{M} \subseteq \mathcal{K},$   
i.e. the closure includes the original set of rules.
2. If on the one hand

$$a \rightarrow \beta \bullet c \delta$$

is a marked rule from the set  $\mathcal{K}$ , where  $c$  is a syntactic variable, and on the other hand

$$c \rightarrow \gamma$$

is a grammar rule of the underlying grammar  $G$ , then the marked rule

$$c \rightarrow \bullet \gamma$$

is also an element of the set  $\mathcal{K}$ . Formally, this is written as follows:

$$(a \rightarrow \beta \bullet c \delta) \in \mathcal{K} \wedge (c \rightarrow \gamma) \in R \Rightarrow (c \rightarrow \bullet \gamma) \in \mathcal{K}$$

The set  $\mathcal{K}$  defined in this way is uniquely determined and is referred to as ***closure*( $\mathcal{M}$ )** in the following.

◇

---

<sup>1</sup>In order to be more concise, we drop the empty string  $\lambda$  in the following rules.

**Remark:** If you recall the Earley algorithm, you will notice that the calculation of the closure is the same as the *prediction operation* in the Earley algorithm.  $\diamond$

For a given set  $\mathcal{M}$  of marked rules, the computation of  $\mathcal{K} := \text{closure}(\mathcal{M})$  can be done iteratively:

1. Initially, set  $\mathcal{K} := \mathcal{M}$ .
2. Then, find all rules of the form

$$a \rightarrow \beta \bullet c \delta$$

within the set  $\mathcal{K}$ , where  $c$  is a syntactic variable. Subsequently, for all rules of the form  $c \rightarrow \gamma$ , add the new marked rule

$$c \rightarrow \bullet \gamma$$

into the set  $\mathcal{K}$ . Repeat this step until no new rules are found.

**Example:** Starting from the grammar for arithmetic expressions shown in Figure 9.4 on page 119, let's consider the set

$$\mathcal{M} := \{ \text{product} \rightarrow \text{product} \star \bullet \text{factor} \}$$

For the set  $\text{closure}(\mathcal{M})$ , we then find

$$\begin{aligned} \text{closure}(\mathcal{M}) = & \{ \text{product} \rightarrow \text{product} \star \bullet \text{factor}, \\ & \text{factor} \rightarrow \bullet (' \text{expr}''), \\ & \text{factor} \rightarrow \bullet \text{NUMBER} \} \end{aligned} \quad \diamond$$

Our goal is to define a Shift-Reduce-Parser

$$P = \langle Q, q_0, \text{action}, \text{goto} \rangle$$

for a given context-free grammar  $G = \langle V, T, R, s \rangle$ . To achieve this goal, we first need to determine how to define the states in the set  $Q$ , as this will almost automatically define the remaining components. As mentioned earlier, we define the states as sets of marked rules. Let's first define

$$\Gamma := \{ a \rightarrow \beta \bullet \gamma \mid (a \rightarrow \beta \gamma) \in R \}$$

as the set of all marked rules of the grammar. However, it is not sensible to allow arbitrary subsets of  $\Gamma$  as states: A subset  $\mathcal{M} \subseteq \Gamma$  is only considered as a state if the set  $\mathcal{M}$  is **closed** under the function  $\text{closure}()$ , meaning  $\text{closure}(\mathcal{M}) = \mathcal{M}$ . Therefore, we define

$$Q := \{ \mathcal{M} \in 2^\Gamma \mid \text{closure}(\mathcal{M}) = \mathcal{M} \}.$$

The interpretation of the sets  $\mathcal{M} \in Q$  is that a state  $\mathcal{M}$  contains exactly those marked rules that can be applied in the situation described by the state.

To simplify the following constructions, we extend the grammar  $G = \langle V, T, R, s \rangle$  by introducing a new start symbol  $\hat{s}$  and a new token  $\$$  to the grammar

$$\hat{G} = \left\langle V \cup \{\hat{s}\}, T \cup \{\$\}, R \cup \{\hat{s} \rightarrow s \$\}, \hat{s} \right\rangle.$$

We refer to the grammar  $\hat{G}$  as the **augmented grammar**. The use of the augmented grammar enables the following definition of the start state. We set:

$$q_0 := \text{closure}(\{\hat{s} \rightarrow \bullet s \$\}).$$

Next, we construct the function  $goto()$ . The definition is as follows:

$$goto(\mathcal{M}, c) := \text{closure}\left(\{a \rightarrow \beta c \bullet \delta \mid (a \rightarrow \beta \bullet c \delta) \in \mathcal{M}\}\right).$$

To understand this definition, assume that the parser is in a state where it tries to parse an  $a$  using the rule  $a \rightarrow \beta c \delta$  and, furthermore, assume that the substring  $\beta$  has already been recognized. This state must contain the marked rule

$$a \rightarrow \beta \bullet c \delta$$

If a  $c$  is recognized in this state, the parser can transition from this state to a state containing the rule

$$a \rightarrow \beta c \bullet \delta.$$

Therefore, we get the above definition of the function  $goto(\mathcal{M}, c)$ . For the subsequent definition of the function  $action(\mathcal{M}, t)$ , it is useful to extend the definition of the function  $goto$  to terminals. For terminals  $t \in T$  we set:

$$goto(\mathcal{M}, t) := \text{closure}\left(\{a \rightarrow \beta t \bullet \delta \mid (a \rightarrow \beta \bullet t \delta) \in \mathcal{M}\}\right).$$

Before we can compute the function  $action$ , we need to define two auxiliary functions, the functions *First* and *Follow*.

### 9.3.1 The Functions *First* and *Follow*

In this section, we define the two functions *First* and *Follow*. These functions are needed to compute the function *action*. We consider a given context-free grammar  $G = \langle V, T, R, s \rangle$ .

- (a) For a syntactic variable  $a$ ,  $First(a)$  calculates the set of all tokens with which a string  $w$  can begin, which is derived from the variable  $a$ , for which  $a \Rightarrow_G^* w$  holds.
- (b) For a syntactic variable  $a$ ,  $Follow(a)$  calculates the set of tokens that can follow an  $a$  in a string derived from  $s$ , i.e.,  $t \in Follow(a)$  if there is a derivation of the following form:

$$s \Rightarrow_G^* \beta a t \gamma.$$

Here,  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  are strings consisting of tokens and variables, while  $t$  denotes a single token.

**Definition 25 ( $\lambda$ -generating)** Let  $G = \langle V, T, R, s \rangle$  be a context-free grammar and  $a$  be a syntactic variable, i.e.,  $a \in V$ . The variable  $a$  is called  **$\lambda$ -generating** precisely when

$$a \Rightarrow^* \lambda$$

holds, which means that the empty word can be derived from the variable  $a$ . We write  $nullable(a)$  if the variable  $a$  is  $\lambda$ -generating.  $\diamond$

**Example:** Suppose the grammar  $G$  contains the following rules:

$$\begin{aligned} S &\rightarrow a b c \\ a &\rightarrow 'X' b \mid a 'Y' \mid b c \\ b &\rightarrow 'X' b \mid a 'Y' \mid c c \\ c &\rightarrow a b c \mid \lambda \end{aligned}$$

Initially, it's clear that the variable  $c$  is  $\lambda$ -generating. Then, due to the rule  $b \rightarrow c\ c$ ,  $b$  is also  $\lambda$ -generating, and from the rule  $a \rightarrow b\ c$ ,  $a$  becomes  $\lambda$ -generating as well. Finally,  $S$  is recognized as  $\lambda$ -generating, since the first rule states

$$S \rightarrow a\ b\ c$$

and here, all variables on the right side of the rule have already been proven to be  $\lambda$ -generating variables.  $\diamond$

**Definition 26 ( $\text{First}()$ )** Let  $G = \langle V, T, R, s \rangle$  be a context-free grammar and  $a \in V$ . We define  $\text{First}(a)$  as the set of all tokens  $t$  with which a word derived from  $a$  can begin:

$$\text{First}(a) := \{t \in T \mid \exists \gamma \in (V \cup T)^*: a \Rightarrow^* t\gamma\}.$$

The definition of the function  $\text{First}()$  can be extended to strings in  $(V \cup T)^*$  as follows:

1.  $\text{First}(\lambda) = \{\}$ .
2.  $\text{First}(t\beta) = \{t\}$  if  $t \in T$ .
3.  $\text{First}(a\beta) = \begin{cases} \text{First}(a) \cup \text{First}(\beta) & \text{if } a \Rightarrow^* \lambda; \\ \text{First}(a) & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$

If  $a$  is a variable of  $G$  and the rules defining  $a$  are given as

$$a \rightarrow \alpha_1 \mid \dots \mid \alpha_n,$$

then we have

$$\text{First}(a) = \bigcup_{i=1}^n \text{First}(\alpha_i).$$

$\diamond$

**Remark:** Note that the definitions of the function  $\text{First}(a)$  for variables  $a \in V$  and the function  $\text{First}(\alpha)$  for strings  $\alpha \in (V \cup T)^*$  are mutually recursive. The computation of  $\text{First}(a)$  is best done via a fixpoint computation: Start by setting  $\text{First}(a) := \{\}$  for all variables  $a \in V$  and then continue to iterate the equations defining  $\text{First}(a)$  until none of the sets  $\text{First}(a)$  changes any more. The next example clarifies this idea.

**Example:** We can iteratively compute the sets  $\text{First}(a)$  for the variables  $a$  of the grammar shown in Figure 9.8. It's best to compute the function  $\text{First}(a)$  for the individual variables  $a$  starting with those at the bottom of the hierarchy.

1. First, the rules

$$\text{factor} \rightarrow ('expr') \mid \text{NUMBER}$$

imply that every string derived from  $\text{factor}$  either starts with an opening parenthesis or a number:

$$\text{First}(\text{factor}) = \{ '(', \text{NUMBER} \}.$$

2. Similarly, from the rules

$$\text{productRest} \rightarrow '*' \text{ factor } \text{productRest} \mid '/' \text{ factor } \text{productRest} \mid \lambda$$

we find that a  $\text{productRest}$  either starts with the character “\*” or “/”:

$$\text{First}(\text{productRest}) = \{ '*', '/' \}.$$

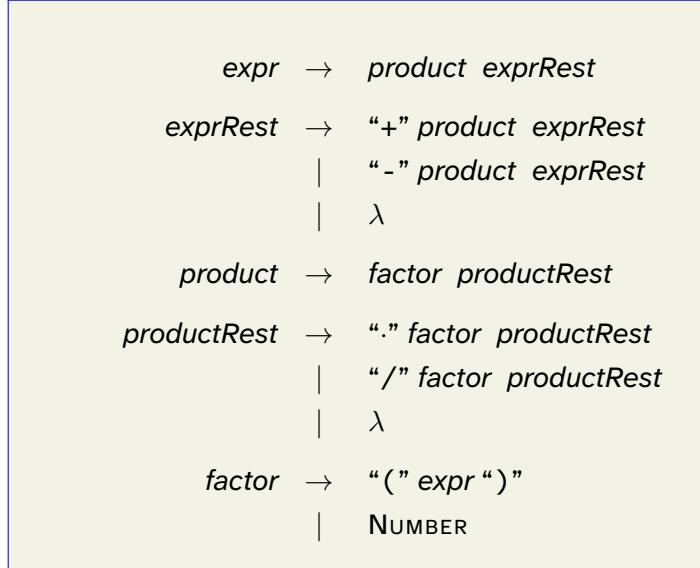


Figure 9.8: Grammar for arithmetic expressions.

3. The rule for the variable *product* is

$$\text{product} \rightarrow \text{factor } \text{productRest}.$$

Since the variable *factor* is not  $\lambda$ -generating, we see that the set  $\text{First}(\text{product})$  matches the set  $\text{First}(\text{factor})$ :

$$\text{First}(\text{product}) = \{ '(', \text{NUMBER} \}.$$

4. From the rules

$$\text{exprRest} \rightarrow '+' \text{product } \text{exprRest} \mid '-' \text{product } \text{exprRest} \mid \lambda,$$

we can compute  $\text{First}(\text{exprRest})$  as follows:

$$\text{First}(\text{exprRest}) = \{ '+', '-' \}.$$

5. Further, from the rule

$$\text{expr} \rightarrow \text{product } \text{exprRest},$$

and the fact that the variable *product* is not  $\lambda$ -generating, the set  $\text{First}(\text{expr})$  matches the set  $\text{First}(\text{product})$ :

$$\text{First}(\text{expr}) = \{ '(', \text{NUMBER} \}.$$

Since we have computed the sets  $\text{First}(a)$  in a clever order, we did not have to perform a proper fixpoint iteration in this example

**Definition 27 (Follow())** Let  $G = \langle V, T, R, s \rangle$  be a context-free grammar and let

$$\widehat{G} = \left\langle V \cup \{\widehat{s}\}, T \cup \{\$\}, R \cup \{\widehat{s} \rightarrow s \$\}, \widehat{s} \right\rangle$$

be the associated augmented grammar. For a variable  $a \in V$  we define  $\text{Follow}(a)$  as the set of all

tokens  $t$  that can follow the variable  $a$  in a derivation:

$$Follow(a) := \{t \in T \cup \{\$\} \mid \exists \beta, \gamma \in (V \cup T \cup \{\$\})^*: \hat{s} \Rightarrow^* \beta a t \gamma\}.$$

If the start symbol  $\hat{s}$  can somehow derive a string  $\beta a t \gamma$  in which the token  $t$  follows the variable  $a$ , then  $t$  is an element of the set  $Follow(a)$ .  $\diamond$

**Example:** Let's reexamine the grammar for arithmetic expressions shown in Figure 9.8.

1. Due to the newly added rule

$$\hat{S} \rightarrow expr \$$$

the set  $Follow(expr)$  must contain the symbol  $\$$ . Furthermore, due to the rule

$$factor \rightarrow ('expr')$$

the set  $Follow(expr)$  must also contain the symbol  $''$ . Thus, we have in total

$$Follow(expr) = \{\$, '\}\}.$$

2. Due to the rule

$$expr \rightarrow product \ exprRest$$

we know that all terminals that can follow an  $expr$  can also follow an  $exprRest$ . Thus, we already know that  $Follow(exprRest)$  contains the tokens  $\$$  and  $''$ . Since  $exprRest$  otherwise only appears at the end of its defining rules, these are all the tokens that can follow  $exprRest$ , and we have

$$Follow(exprRest) = \{\$, '\}\}.$$

3. The rules

$$exprRest \rightarrow '+' product \ exprRest \mid '-' product \ exprRest$$

show that all elements from  $First(exprRest)$  can follow a  $product$ . However, that's not all: since the variable  $exprRest$  is  $\lambda$ -generating, additionally, all tokens that can follow  $exprRest$  can also follow  $product$ . Thus, we have in total

$$Follow(product) = \{ '+', ' - ', \$, '\}\}.$$

4. The rule

$$product \rightarrow factor \ productRest$$

shows that all terminals that can follow a  $product$  can also follow a  $productRest$ . Since  $productRest$  otherwise only appears at the end of its defining rules, these are all the tokens that can follow  $productRest$ , and we have in total

$$Follow(productRest) = \{ '+', ' - ', \$, '\}\}.$$

5. The rules

$$productRest \rightarrow '*' factor \ productRest \mid '/' factor \ productRest$$

show that all elements from  $First(productRest)$  can follow a  $factor$ . However, that's not all: since the variable  $productRest$  is  $\lambda$ -generating, additionally, all tokens that can follow  $productRest$  can also follow  $factor$ . Thus, we have in total

$$Follow(factor) = \{ '*', '/', '+', ' - ', \$, '\}\}.$$

$\diamond$

The last example demonstrates that the computation of the *nullable()* predicate and the computation of the sets *First(a)* and *Follow(a)* for a syntactic variable *a* are closely interconnected. Suppose we have a grammar rule:

$$a \rightarrow Y_1 Y_2 \cdots Y_k$$

Then the following relationships exist between the *nullable()* predicate and the *First()* and *Follow()* functions:

1.  $\forall t \in T : \neg \text{nullable}(t).$
2.  $k = 0 \Rightarrow \text{nullable}(a).$
3.  $(\forall i \in \{1, \dots, k\} : \text{nullable}(Y_i)) \Rightarrow \text{nullable}(a).$   
Setting  $k = 0$  here, we see that 2. is a special case of 3.
4.  $\text{First}(Y_1) \subseteq \text{First}(a).$
5.  $(\forall j \in \{1, \dots, i-1\} : \text{nullable}(Y_j)) \Rightarrow \text{First}(Y_i) \subseteq \text{First}(a).$   
Setting  $i = 1$  above, we see that 4. is a special case of 5.
6.  $\text{Follow}(a) \subseteq \text{Follow}(Y_k).$
7.  $(\forall j \in \{i+1, \dots, k\} : \text{nullable}(Y_j)) \Rightarrow \text{Follow}(a) \subseteq \text{Follow}(Y_i).$   
Setting  $i = k$  here, we see that 6. is a special case of 7.
8.  $\forall i \in \{1, \dots, k-1\} : \text{First}(Y_{i+1}) \subseteq \text{Follow}(Y_i).$
9.  $(\forall j \in \{i+1, \dots, l-1\} : \text{nullable}(Y_j)) \Rightarrow \text{First}(Y_l) \subseteq \text{Follow}(Y_i).$   
Setting  $l = i + 1$  here, we see that 8. is a special case of 9.

Using these relationships, *nullable()*, *First()*, and *Follow()* can be computed iteratively through a fixpoint iteration:

1. Initially, the functions *First(a)* and *Follow(a)* for each syntactic variable *a* are initialized with the empty set. The predicate *nullable(a)* is set to *false* for each syntactic variable.
2. Subsequently, the rules outlined above are applied repeatedly until no further changes occur from their application.

### 9.3.2 Computing the Function *action*

Finally, we specify how the function *action(M, t)* is computed for a set of marked rules *M* and a token *t*. When defining *action(M, t)*, we distinguish four cases.

1. If *M* contains a marked rule of the form  $a \rightarrow \beta \bullet t \delta$  and  $t \neq \$$ , then we set

$$\text{action}(M, t) := (\text{shift}, \text{goto}(M, t)),$$

because in this case the parser is trying to recognize an *a* using the rule  $a \rightarrow \beta t \delta$  and has already recognized  $\beta$ . If the next token in the input string is indeed the token *t*, the parser can read this *t* and transitions from the state  $a \rightarrow \beta \bullet t \delta$  to the state  $a \rightarrow \beta t \bullet \delta$ , which is computed by the function *goto(M, t)*. So, we have

$$\text{action}(M, t) := (\text{shift}, \text{goto}(M, t)) \quad \text{if } (a \rightarrow \beta \bullet t \delta) \in M \text{ and } t \neq \$.$$

2. If  $\mathcal{M}$  contains a marked rule of the form  $a \rightarrow \beta \bullet$  and additionally  $t \in Follow(a)$ , then we set

$$action(\mathcal{M}, t) := \langle \text{reduce}, a \rightarrow \beta \rangle,$$

because in this case the parser is trying to recognize an  $a$  using the rule  $a \rightarrow \beta$  and has already recognized  $\beta$ . If the next token in the input string is the token  $t$  and  $t$  is a token that can follow  $a$ , i.e.,  $t \in Follow(a)$ , then the parser can apply the rule  $a \rightarrow \beta$  and reduce the symbol stack with this rule. Therefore,

$$action(\mathcal{M}, t) := \langle \text{reduce}, a \rightarrow \beta \rangle \quad \text{if } (a \rightarrow \beta \bullet) \in \mathcal{M}, a \neq \hat{s} \text{ and } t \in Follow(a).$$

3. If  $\mathcal{M}$  contains the marked rule  $\hat{s} \rightarrow s \bullet \$$  and we have completely read the string to be parsed, we set

$$action(\mathcal{M}, \$) := \text{accept},$$

because in this case the parser is trying to recognize  $\hat{s}$  using the rule  $\hat{s} \rightarrow s \$$  and has already recognized  $s$ . If the next token in the input string is the end-of-file character  $\$$ , then the string being parsed belongs to the language specified by the grammar  $G$ ,  $L(G)$ . Therefore, we have

$$action(\mathcal{M}, \$) := \text{accept}, \quad \text{if } (\hat{s} \rightarrow s \bullet \$) \in \mathcal{M}.$$

4. In all other cases, we set

$$action(\mathcal{M}, t) := \text{error}.$$

Conflicts can arise between the first two rules. We distinguish between two types of conflicts.

1. A **shift-reduce conflict** occurs when both the first and second cases apply. In this situation, the set  $\mathcal{M}$  contains, on one hand, a marked rule of the form

$$a \rightarrow \beta \bullet t \gamma,$$

and on the other hand,  $\mathcal{M}$  contains a rule of the form

$$c \rightarrow \delta \bullet \quad \text{with } t \in Follow(c).$$

If the next token is  $t$ , it is unclear whether this token should be pushed onto the symbol stack and the parser transition to a state with the marked rule  $a \rightarrow \beta t \bullet \gamma$ , or whether the symbol stack should be reduced using the rule  $c \rightarrow \delta$  instead.

2. A **reduce-reduce conflict** exists if the set  $\mathcal{M}$  contains two different marked rules of the form

$$c_1 \rightarrow \gamma_1 \bullet \quad \text{and} \quad c_2 \rightarrow \gamma_2 \bullet$$

and if at the same time  $t \in Follow(c_1) \cap Follow(c_2)$ , because then it is not clear which of the two rules the parser should apply when the next token to be read is  $t$ .

If either of these conflicts occurs, we say that the grammar is not an SLR grammar. Such a grammar cannot be parsed using an SLR parser. We will later provide examples of both types of conflicts, but first, we want to examine a grammar where no conflicts occur and actually compute the functions  $goto()$  and  $action()$  for it. We use the grammar for arithmetic expressions that is shown in Figure 9.4 as a basis.

Since the syntactic variable  $expr$  appears on the right side of grammar rules, we define  $start$  as a new start symbol and add the rule

$$start \rightarrow expr \$$$

to the grammar. This step corresponds to the previously discussed process of [augmenting](#) the grammar.

First, we compute the set of states  $Q$ . We had previously provided the following formula for this:

$$Q := \{M \in 2^\Gamma \mid \text{closure}(M) = M\}.$$

However, this set also contains states that cannot be reached from the start state via the function `goto()`. Therefore, we only compute the states that can actually be reached from the start state using the function `goto()`. To avoid making the calculation too wordy, we introduce the following abbreviations:

$s := \text{start}$ ,  $e := \text{expr}$ ,  $p := \text{product}$ ,  $f := \text{factor}$ , and  $N := \text{NUMBER}$ .

We begin with the start state:

1.  $s_0 := \text{closure}(\{ s \rightarrow \bullet e \$ \})$   
 $= \{ s \rightarrow \bullet e \$,$   
 $e \rightarrow \bullet e '+' p, e \rightarrow \bullet e '-' p, e \rightarrow \bullet p,$   
 $p \rightarrow \bullet p '*' f, p \rightarrow \bullet p '/' f, p \rightarrow \bullet f,$   
 $f \rightarrow \bullet ('e ')', f \rightarrow \bullet N \}$ .
2.  $s_1 := \text{goto}(s_0, f)$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{p \rightarrow f \bullet\})$   
 $= \{p \rightarrow f \bullet\}.$
3.  $s_2 := \text{goto}(s_0, N)$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{f \rightarrow N \bullet\})$   
 $= \{f \rightarrow N \bullet\}.$
4.  $s_3 := \text{goto}(s_0, p)$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{p \rightarrow p \bullet '*' f, p \rightarrow p \bullet '/' f, e \rightarrow p \bullet\})$   
 $= \{p \rightarrow p \bullet '*' f, p \rightarrow p \bullet '/' f, e \rightarrow p \bullet\}.$
5.  $s_4 := \text{goto}(s_0, e)$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{s \rightarrow e \bullet \$, e \rightarrow e \bullet '+' p, e \rightarrow e \bullet '-' p\})$   
 $= \{s \rightarrow e \bullet \$, e \rightarrow e \bullet '+' p, e \rightarrow e \bullet '-' p\}.$
6.  $s_5 := \text{goto}(s_0, '(')$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{f \rightarrow '(' \bullet e ')'\})$   
 $= \{f \rightarrow '(' \bullet e ')'$   
 $e \rightarrow \bullet e '+' p, e \rightarrow \bullet e '-' p, e \rightarrow \bullet p,$   
 $p \rightarrow \bullet p '*' f, p \rightarrow \bullet p '/' f, p \rightarrow \bullet f,$   
 $f \rightarrow \bullet ('e ')', f \rightarrow \bullet N \}.$
7.  $s_6 := \text{goto}(s_5, e)$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{f \rightarrow '(', e \bullet ')', e \rightarrow e \bullet '+' p, e \rightarrow e \bullet '-' p\})$   
 $= \{f \rightarrow '(', e \bullet ')', e \rightarrow e \bullet '+' p, e \rightarrow e \bullet '-' p\}.$
8.  $s_7 := \text{goto}(s_6, ')')$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{f \rightarrow '(', e ')', e \bullet\})$   
 $= \{f \rightarrow '(', e ')', e \bullet\}.$

9.  $s_8 := \text{goto}(s_4, '+')$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{e \rightarrow e '+' \bullet p\})$   
 $= \{ e \rightarrow e '+' \bullet p$   
 $\quad p \rightarrow \bullet p '*' f, p \rightarrow \bullet p '/' f, p \rightarrow \bullet f,$   
 $\quad f \rightarrow \bullet('e')', f \rightarrow \bullet N \}.$
10.  $s_9 := \text{goto}(s_4, '-')$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{e \rightarrow e '-' \bullet p\})$   
 $= \{ e \rightarrow e '-' \bullet p$   
 $\quad p \rightarrow \bullet p '*' f, p \rightarrow \bullet p '/' f, p \rightarrow \bullet f,$   
 $\quad f \rightarrow \bullet('e')', f \rightarrow \bullet N \}.$
11.  $s_{10} := \text{goto}(s_9, p)$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{e \rightarrow e '-' p\bullet, p \rightarrow p \bullet '*' f, p \rightarrow p \bullet '/' f\})$   
 $= \{ e \rightarrow e '-' p\bullet, p \rightarrow p \bullet '*' f, p \rightarrow p \bullet '/' f \}.$
12.  $s_{11} := \text{goto}(s_3, '/')$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{p \rightarrow p '/' \bullet f\})$   
 $= \{ p \rightarrow p '/' \bullet f, f \rightarrow \bullet('e')', f \rightarrow \bullet N \}.$
13.  $s_{12} := \text{goto}(s_3, '*')$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{p \rightarrow p '*' \bullet f\})$   
 $= \{ p \rightarrow p '*' \bullet f, f \rightarrow \bullet('e')', f \rightarrow \bullet N \}.$
14.  $s_{13} := \text{goto}(s_{12}, f)$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{p \rightarrow p '*' f\bullet\})$   
 $= \{ p \rightarrow p '*' f\bullet \}.$
15.  $s_{14} := \text{goto}(s_{11}, f)$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{p \rightarrow p '/' f\bullet\})$   
 $= \{ p \rightarrow p '/' f\bullet \}.$
16.  $s_{15} := \text{goto}(s_8, p)$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{e \rightarrow e '+' p\bullet, p \rightarrow p \bullet '*' f, p \rightarrow p \bullet '/' f\})$   
 $= \{ e \rightarrow e '+' p\bullet, p \rightarrow p \bullet '*' f, p \rightarrow p \bullet '/' f \}.$

Further calculations do not yield any new states. For instance, when we compute  $\text{goto}(s_8, '(')$ , we find:

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{goto}(s_8, '(') \\ &= \text{closure}(\{f \rightarrow (' \bullet e')'\}) \\ &= \{ f \rightarrow (' \bullet e')' \\ &\quad e \rightarrow \bullet e '+' p, e \rightarrow \bullet e '-' p, e \rightarrow \bullet p, \\ &\quad p \rightarrow \bullet p '*' f, p \rightarrow \bullet p '/' f, p \rightarrow \bullet f, \\ &\quad f \rightarrow \bullet('e')', f \rightarrow \bullet N \} \\ &= s_5. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the set of states for the Shift-Reduce parser is given by

$$Q := \{s_0, s_1, s_2, s_3, s_4, s_5, s_6, s_7, s_8, s_9, s_{10}, s_{11}, s_{12}, s_{13}, s_{14}, s_{15}\}$$

Next, we investigate whether there are any conflicts, and we look specifically at the set  $s_{15}$ . Due to the marked rule

$$p \rightarrow p \bullet ' *' f$$

a shift must occur in state  $s_{15}$  if the next token is ' $*$ '. On the other hand, the state  $s_{15}$  includes the rule

$$e \rightarrow e ' +' p \bullet .$$

This rule indicates that the symbol stack must be reduced with the grammar rule  $e \rightarrow e ' +' p$  if a character from the set  $\text{Follow}(e)$  appears in the input. If ' $*$ ' were in  $\text{Follow}(e)$ , then we would have a Shift-Reduce conflict. However,

$$\text{Follow}(e) = \{ '+', '- ', ')' , '$' \},$$

and therefore ' $*$ '  $\notin \text{Follow}(e)$ , so there is no Shift-Reduce conflict here. An examination of the other sets shows that there are also no Shift-Reduce or Reduce-Reduce conflicts in any of them.

Next, we calculate the *action* function. We consider two cases as examples.

1. First, we compute  $\text{action}(s_1, '+')$ . It holds that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{action}(s_1, '+') &= \text{action}(\{p \rightarrow f \bullet\}, '+') \\ &= \langle \text{reduce}, p \rightarrow f \rangle, \end{aligned}$$

since we have ' $+$ '  $\in \text{Follow}(p)$ .

2. Next, we compute  $\text{action}(s_4, '+')$ . It holds that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{action}(s_4, '+') &= \text{action}(\{s \rightarrow e \bullet \$, e \rightarrow e \bullet ' +' p, e \rightarrow e \bullet ' - ' p\}, '+') \\ &= \langle \text{shift}, \text{closure}(\{e \rightarrow e ' +' \bullet p\}) \rangle \\ &= \langle \text{shift}, s_8 \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

If we were to continue these calculations, we would obtain Table 9.1, as we have chosen the names of the states to match those of the corresponding states in Tables 9.1 and 9.2.

**Exercise 23:** Figure 9.9 shows a grammar for boolean expressions.

- (a) Provide the sets  $\text{First}(v)$  for all syntactic variables  $v$ .
- (b) Provide the sets  $\text{Follow}(v)$  for all syntactic variables  $v$ .
- (c) Calculate the set of SLR states.
- (d) Check whether there are any conflicts.
- (e) Specify the function *action* for the first four states.

Abbreviate the names of the syntactic variables and tokens with  $b, c, s$ , and  $I$ . ◊

### 9.3.3 Shift/Reduce and Reduce/Reduce Conflicts

In this section, we examine shift-reduce and reduce-reduce conflicts in more detail and consider two examples. The first example shows a shift-reduce conflict. The grammar shown in Figure 9.10 is ambiguous because it does not specify whether the operator '+' binds stronger or weaker than the

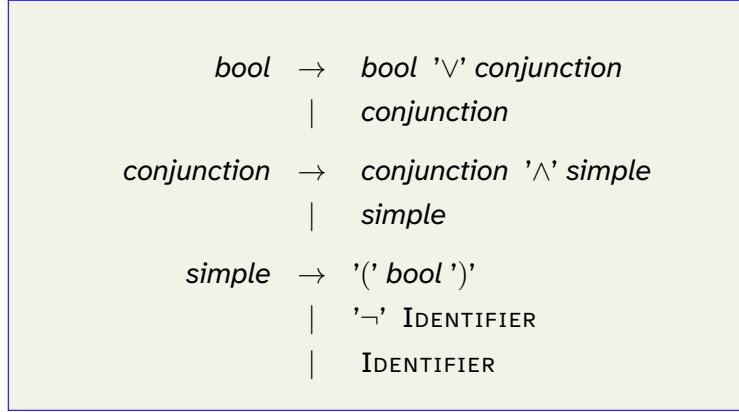


Figure 9.9: A grammar for Boolean expression in conjunctive normal form.

operator  $'*'.$  If we interpret the non-terminal  $N$  as an abbreviation for **NUMBER**, this grammar allows us to interpret the expression  $1 + 2 * 3$  either as

$(1 + 2) * 3$  or as  $1 + (2 * 3).$

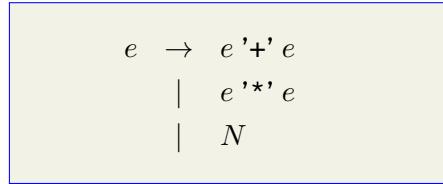


Figure 9.10: A grammar with shift/reduce conflicts.

We augment the grammar and calculate the start state  $s_0:$

$$\begin{aligned} s_0 &= \text{closure}(\{s \rightarrow \bullet e \$\}) \\ &= \{s \rightarrow \bullet e \$, e \rightarrow \bullet e ' +' e, e \rightarrow \bullet e ' *' e, e \rightarrow \bullet N\}. \end{aligned}$$

Next, we calculate  $s_1 := \text{goto}(s_0, e):$

$$\begin{aligned} s_1 &= \text{goto}(s_0, e) \\ &= \text{closure}(\{s \rightarrow e \bullet \$, e \rightarrow e \bullet ' +' e, e \rightarrow e \bullet ' *' e\}) \\ &= \{s \rightarrow e \bullet \$, e \rightarrow e \bullet ' +' e, e \rightarrow e \bullet ' *' e\} \end{aligned}$$

Now we calculate  $s_2 := \text{goto}(s_1, '+):$

$$\begin{aligned} s_2 &= \text{goto}(s_1, '+) \\ &= \text{closure}(\{e \rightarrow e ' +' \bullet e, e \rightarrow \bullet e ' +' e, e \rightarrow \bullet e ' *' e, e \rightarrow \bullet N\}) \\ &= \{e \rightarrow e ' +' \bullet e, e \rightarrow \bullet e ' +' e, e \rightarrow \bullet e ' *' e, e \rightarrow \bullet N\} \end{aligned}$$

Next, we calculate  $s_3 := \text{goto}(s_2, e):$

$$\begin{aligned} s_3 &= \text{goto}(s_2, e) \\ &= \text{closure}(\{e \rightarrow e ' +' e \bullet, e \rightarrow e \bullet ' +' e, e \rightarrow e \bullet ' *' e\}) \\ &= \{e \rightarrow e ' +' e \bullet, e \rightarrow e \bullet ' +' e, e \rightarrow e \bullet ' *' e\} \end{aligned}$$

Here, a shift-reduce conflict arises when calculating  $\text{action}(s_3, ' *)$ , because on one hand, the marked

rule

$$e \rightarrow e \bullet^{**} e,$$

demands that the token '\*\*' is pushed onto the stack, but on the other hand, we have

$$\text{Follow}(e) = \{ '+', '**', '$' \},$$

so that, if the next token to be read has the value '\*\*', the symbol stack should be reduced with the rule

$$e \rightarrow e' + e \bullet.$$

**Remark:** It is not surprising that we found a conflict in the grammar specified above, as this grammar is ambiguous. On the other hand, it can be shown that every SLR grammar must be unambiguous. Consequently, an ambiguous grammar is never an SLR grammar. However, the converse of this statement is not true, as we will see in the next example.  $\diamond$

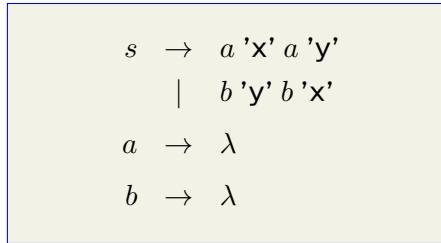


Figure 9.11: A grammar containing a reduce/reduce conflict.

Next, we examine a grammar that is not an SLR grammar because it contains reduce-reduce conflicts. We consider the grammar shown in Figure 9.11. This grammar is unambiguous, as we have

$$L(s) = \{ 'xy', 'yx' \}$$

and the string 'xy' can only be derived using the rule  $s \rightarrow a 'x' a 'y'$ , while the string 'yx' can only be generated using the rule  $s \rightarrow b 'y' b 'x'$ . To demonstrate that this grammar contains shift-reduce conflicts, we calculate the start state of an SLR parser for this grammar.

$$\begin{aligned} s_0 &= \text{closure}(\{\hat{s} \rightarrow \bullet s \$\}) \\ &= \{\hat{s} \rightarrow \bullet s \$, s \rightarrow \bullet a 'x' a 'y', s \rightarrow \bullet b 'y' b 'x', a \rightarrow \bullet \lambda, b \rightarrow \bullet \lambda\} \\ &= \{\hat{s} \rightarrow \bullet s \$, s \rightarrow \bullet a 'x' a 'y', s \rightarrow \bullet b 'y' b 'x', a \rightarrow \lambda \bullet, b \rightarrow \lambda \bullet\}, \end{aligned}$$

since  $a \rightarrow \bullet \lambda$  is the same as  $a \rightarrow \lambda \bullet$ . In this state, there is a reduce-reduce conflict between the two marked rules

$$a \rightarrow \lambda \bullet \quad \text{and} \quad b \rightarrow \lambda \bullet.$$

This conflict arises when calculating

$$\text{action}(s_0, 'x')$$

because we have

$$\text{Follow}(a) = \{ 'x', 'y' \} = \text{Follow}(b).$$

Thus, it is unclear which of these rules the parser should use to reduce the input in state  $s_0$  when the next token read has the value 'x', as this token is both an element of the set  $\text{Follow}(a)$  and the set

*Follow(b)*.

**Remark:** As part of the resources provided with this lecture, the file

[Formal-Languages/blob/master/Python/Chapter-09/SLR-Table-Generator.ipynb](#)

contains a *Python* program that checks whether a given grammar is an SLR grammar. This program computes the states as well as the action table of a given grammar. ◇

## 9.4 Canonical LR Parsers

The reduce-reduce conflict that occurs in the grammar shown in Figure 9.11 can be resolved as follows:  
In the state

$$\begin{aligned}s_0 &= \text{closure}(\{\widehat{s} \rightarrow \bullet s \$\}) \\ &= \{\widehat{s} \rightarrow \bullet s \$, s \rightarrow \bullet a 'x' a 'y', s \rightarrow \bullet b 'y' b 'x', a \rightarrow \lambda \bullet, b \rightarrow \lambda \bullet\}\end{aligned}$$

the marked rules  $a \rightarrow \lambda \bullet$  and  $b \rightarrow \lambda \bullet$  arise from the closure calculation of the rules

$$s \rightarrow \bullet a 'x' a 'y' \quad \text{and} \quad s \rightarrow \bullet b 'y' b 'x'.$$

For the first rule, it is clear that the first  $a$  must be followed by a ' $x$ ', and for the second rule, we see that the first  $b$  must be followed by a ' $y$ '. This information goes beyond what is contained in the sets *Follow(a)* and *Follow(b)*, as we now consider the **context** in which the syntactic variable appears. This allows us to define the function  $\text{action}(s_0, 'x')$  and  $\text{action}(s_0, 'y')$  as follows:

$$\text{action}(s_0, 'x') = \langle \text{reduce}, a \rightarrow \lambda \rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \text{action}(s_0, 'y') = \langle \text{reduce}, b \rightarrow \lambda \rangle.$$

This definition resolves the reduce-reduce conflict. The central idea is to include the context in which a rule appears in the closure calculation. To do this, we expand the definition of a marked rule next.

### Definition 28 (Extended Marked Rule)

An **extended marked rule** (abbreviated: e.m.R.) of a grammar  $G = \langle V, T, R, s \rangle$  is a quadruple

$$\langle a, \beta, \gamma, L \rangle,$$

where:

1.  $(a \rightarrow \beta\gamma) \in R$ .
2.  $L \subseteq T$ .

We write the extended marked rule  $\langle a, \beta, \gamma, L \rangle$  as

$$a \rightarrow \beta \bullet \gamma : L.$$

If  $L$  consists of only one element  $t$ , that is if  $L = \{t\}$ , we omit the set brackets and write the rule as

$$a \rightarrow \beta \bullet \gamma : t.$$

◇

Intuitively, we interpret the e.m.R.  $a \rightarrow \beta \bullet \gamma : L$  as a state in which the following applies:

- (a) The parser attempts to recognize an  $a$  using the grammar rule  $a \rightarrow \beta\gamma$ .
- (b) So far,  $\beta$  has been recognized. For the rule  $a \rightarrow \beta\gamma$  to be applied,  $\gamma$  must now be recognized.
- (c) Additionally, we know that a token from the set  $L$  must follow the syntactic variable  $a$ .

Therefore, we refer to the set  $L$  as the set of **Follow Tokens**.

Working with extended marked rules is quite similar to working with marked rules, however, we need to modify the definitions of the functions *closure*, *goto*, and *action* slightly. We begin with the function *closure*.

**Definition 29 (*closure*( $\mathcal{M}$ ))** Let  $\mathcal{M}$  be a set of extended marked rules. We define the *closure* of  $\mathcal{M}$  as the smallest set  $\mathcal{K}$  of marked rules for which the following holds:

1.  $\mathcal{M} \subseteq \mathcal{K}$ ,

thus the closure encompasses the original set of rules.

2. On one hand, if

$$a \rightarrow \beta \bullet c\delta : L$$

is an e.m.R. from the set  $\mathcal{K}$ , where  $c$  is a syntactic variable, and on the other hand, if

$$c \rightarrow \gamma$$

is a grammar rule of the underlying grammar  $G$ , then the e.m.R.

$$c \rightarrow \bullet\gamma : \bigcup\{\text{First}(\delta t) \mid t \in L\}$$

is also an element of the set  $\mathcal{K}$ . The function *First*( $\alpha$ ) computes for a string  $\alpha \in (T \cup V)^*$  the set of all tokens  $t$  with which a string that has been derived from  $\alpha$  can begin.

The uniquely determined set  $\mathcal{K}$  defined in this way is again denoted by *closure*( $\mathcal{M}$ ).  $\diamond$

**Remark:** Compared to the old definition, only the computation of the set of follow tokens has been added. The context in which the variable  $c$ , to be recognized by the rule  $c \rightarrow \gamma$ , appears is initially given by the string  $\delta$  that follows  $c$  in the rule  $a \rightarrow \beta \bullet c\delta : L$ . Now it is possible that  $\delta$  derives the empty string  $\lambda$ . In this case, the follow tokens from the set  $L$  also play a role, because if  $\delta \Rightarrow^* \lambda$  is true, then a follow token  $t$  from the set  $L$  can also follow the  $c$ .  $\diamond$

For a given set of e.m.R.s  $\mathcal{M}$ , the computation of  $\mathcal{K} := \text{closure}(\mathcal{M})$  can be done iteratively. Figure 9.12 shows the computation of *closure*( $\mathcal{M}$ ). The main difference compared to the earlier computation of *closure*() is that in the e.m.R.s that we include for a variable  $c$  in *closure*( $\mathcal{M}$ ), we consider the context in which  $c$  appears in the set of Follow Tokens. This makes it possible to describe the states of the parser more precisely than with marked rules.

---

```

1   function closure( $\mathcal{M}$ ) {
2        $\mathcal{K}$  :=  $\mathcal{M}$ ;
3        $\mathcal{K}^-$  := {};
4       while ( $\mathcal{K}^- \neq \mathcal{K}$ ) {
5            $\mathcal{K}^-$  :=  $\mathcal{K}$ ;
6            $\mathcal{K}$  :=  $\mathcal{K} \cup \{(c \rightarrow \bullet\gamma : \bigcup\{\text{First}(\delta t) \mid t \in L\}) \mid (a \rightarrow \beta \bullet c\delta : L) \in \mathcal{K} \wedge (c \rightarrow \gamma) \in R\}$ ;
7       }
8       return  $\mathcal{K}$ ;
9   }
```

---

Figure 9.12: The computation of *closure*( $\mathcal{M}$ ).

**Remark:** The expression  $\bigcup\{First(\delta t) \mid t \in L\}$  looks more complicated than it actually is. To compute this expression, it is useful to make a distinction based on whether  $\delta$  can derive the empty string  $\lambda$  or not, because it holds that

$$\bigcup\{First(\delta t) \mid t \in L\} = \begin{cases} First(\delta) \cup L & \text{if } \delta \Rightarrow^* \lambda; \\ First(\delta) & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

The computation of  $goto(\mathcal{M}, t)$  for a set  $\mathcal{M}$  of extended rules and a symbol  $x$  changes from the computation in the case of simple marked rules only by appending the set of **follow tokens**, which itself remains unchanged:

$$goto(\mathcal{M}, x) := closure\left(\{a \rightarrow \beta x \bullet \delta : L \mid (a \rightarrow \beta \bullet x \delta : L) \in \mathcal{M}\}\right).$$

Similar to the theory of SLR parsers, we augment our grammar  $G$  by adding a new start variable  $\hat{s}$  to the set of variables and the new rule  $\hat{s} \rightarrow s$  to the set of rules. Further, we add the symbol  $\$$  to the tokens. Then the start state has the form

$$q_0 := closure(\{\hat{s} \rightarrow \bullet s : \$\}),$$

because the file end symbol “ $\$$ ” must follow the start symbol. Finally, we show how the definition of the function **action()** must be changed. We specify the computation of this function through the following conditional equations.

1.  $(a \rightarrow \beta \bullet t \delta : L) \in \mathcal{M} \Rightarrow action(\mathcal{M}, t) := \langle \text{shift}, goto(\mathcal{M}, t) \rangle.$
2.  $(a \rightarrow \beta \bullet : L) \in \mathcal{M} \wedge a \neq \hat{s} \wedge t \in L \Rightarrow action(\mathcal{M}, t) := \langle \text{reduce}, a \rightarrow \beta \rangle.$
3.  $(\hat{s} \rightarrow s \bullet : \$) \in \mathcal{M} \Rightarrow action(\mathcal{M}, \$) := \text{accept}.$
4. Otherwise:  $action(\mathcal{M}, t) := \text{error}.$

If a conflict occurs in these equations, because both the condition of the first equation and the condition of the second equation are met, then we speak again of a **shift-reduce conflict**. A shift-reduce conflict thus occurs in the computation of  $action(\mathcal{M}, t)$  when there are two e.m.R.s

$$(a \rightarrow \beta \bullet t \delta : L_1) \in \mathcal{M} \quad \text{and} \quad (c \rightarrow \gamma \bullet : L_2) \in \mathcal{M} \quad \text{with } t \in L_2$$

because then it is unclear whether in state  $\mathcal{M}$  the token  $t$  should be pushed onto the stack, or whether instead the symbol stack should be reduced with the rule  $c \rightarrow \gamma$ .

**Remark:** Compared to an SLR parser, the possibility of shift-reduce conflicts is reduced, because in an SLR parser, a shift-reduce conflict already occurs if  $t \in Follow(c)$  and the set  $L_2$  is usually smaller than the set  $Follow(c)$ .  $\diamond$

A **reduce-reduce conflict** occurs when there are two e.m.R.s

$$(a \rightarrow \beta \bullet : L_1) \in \mathcal{M} \quad \text{and} \quad (c \rightarrow \delta \bullet : L_2) \in \mathcal{M} \quad \text{with} \quad L_1 \cap L_2 \neq \emptyset$$

because then it is unclear which of these two rules should be used to reduce the symbol stack when the next token is an element of the intersection  $L_1 \cap L_2$ .

**Remark:** Compared to an SLR parser, the possibility of reduce-reduce conflicts is reduced, because in an SLR parser, a reduce-reduce conflict already occurs if there exists a  $t$  in the set  $Follow(a) \cap Follow(c)$

and the *Follow* sets are often larger than the sets  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ .  $\diamond$

**Example:** We revisit the example of the grammar shown in Figure 9.11 and first calculate the set of all states.

1.  $s_0 := \text{closure}(\{\hat{s} \rightarrow \bullet s : \$\})$   
 $= \{\hat{s} \rightarrow \bullet s : \$, s \rightarrow \bullet a'x'a'y' : \$, s \rightarrow \bullet b'y'b'x' : \$, a \rightarrow \bullet : 'x', b \rightarrow \bullet : 'y'\}.$
2.  $s_1 := \text{goto}(s_0, a)$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{s \rightarrow a \bullet 'x'a'y' : \$\})$   
 $= \{s \rightarrow a \bullet 'x'a'y' : \$\}.$
3.  $s_2 := \text{goto}(s_0, s)$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{\hat{s} \rightarrow s \bullet : \$\})$   
 $= \{\hat{s} \rightarrow s \bullet : \$\}.$
4.  $s_3 := \text{goto}(s_0, b)$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{s \rightarrow b \bullet 'y'b'x' : \$\})$   
 $= \{s \rightarrow b \bullet 'y'b'x' : \$\}.$
5.  $s_4 := \text{goto}(s_3, 'y')$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{s \rightarrow b'y' \bullet b'x' : \$\})$   
 $= \{s \rightarrow b'y' \bullet b'x' : \$, b \rightarrow \bullet : 'x'\}.$
6.  $s_5 := \text{goto}(s_4, b)$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{s \rightarrow b'y'b \bullet 'x' : \$\})$   
 $= \{s \rightarrow b'y'b \bullet 'x' : \$\}.$
7.  $s_6 := \text{goto}(s_5, 'x')$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{s \rightarrow b'y'b'x' \bullet : \$\})$   
 $= \{s \rightarrow b'y'b'x' \bullet : \$\}.$
8.  $s_7 := \text{goto}(s_1, 'x')$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{s \rightarrow a'x' \bullet a'y' : \$\})$   
 $= \{s \rightarrow a'x' \bullet a'y' : \$, a \rightarrow \bullet : 'y'\}.$
9.  $s_8 := \text{goto}(s_7, a)$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{s \rightarrow a'x'a \bullet 'y' : \$\})$   
 $= \{s \rightarrow a'x'a \bullet 'y' : \$\}.$
10.  $s_9 := \text{goto}(s_8, 'y')$   
 $= \text{closure}(\{s \rightarrow a'x'a'y' \bullet : \$\})$   
 $= \{s \rightarrow a'x'a'y' \bullet : \$\}.$

Next, we examine whether there are any conflicts in the states. In the last section, we found a Reduce-Reduce conflict in the start state  $s_0$  between the two rules  $a \rightarrow \lambda$  and  $b \rightarrow \lambda$ , because

$$\text{Follow}(a) \cap \text{Follow}(b) = \{'x', 'y'\} \neq \{\}$$

holds. This conflict has now disappeared, as there is no conflict between the e.m.R.s

$$a \rightarrow \bullet : 'x' \quad \text{and} \quad b \rightarrow \bullet : 'y'$$

due to  $'x' \neq 'y'$ . It is easy to see that no conflicts arise in the other states either.

**Exercise 24:** Calculate the set of states for an LR parser for the following grammar:

$$\begin{array}{l} e \rightarrow e '+' p \\ | \\ p \\ p \rightarrow p '*' f \\ | \\ f \\ f \rightarrow ('e') \\ | \\ N \end{array}$$

Additionally, investigate whether this grammar has shift-reduce conflicts or reduce-reduce conflicts.

**Remark:** As part of the resources provided with this lecture, the file

[Python/Chapter-09/LR-Table-Generator.ipynb](#)

contains a *Python* program that checks whether a given grammar qualifies as a canonical LR grammar. This program computes the LR-states as well as the action table for a given grammar. ◇

**Remark:** The theory of LR-parsing has been developed by Donald E. Knuth [[Knu65](#)]. His theory is described in the paper “[On the translation of languages from left to right](#)”. ◇

## 9.5 LALR-Parser\*

The number of states in an LR parser is often significantly larger than the number of states in an SLR parser for the same grammar. For instance, an SLR parser for the [C grammar](#) manages with 349 states. However, since the language C is not an SLR language, creating an SLR parse table for C results in a number of [conflicts](#), so that an SLR parser for the language C does not work. In contrast, an LR parser for the language C has 1572 states, as you can see [here](#). In the seventies, when the available main memory of most computers was still modestly sized compared to today, LR parsers therefore had a size that was problematic in practice. A detailed analysis of the set of states of LR parsers showed that it is often possible to combine certain states. This can significantly reduce the number of states in most cases. We illustrate the concept with an example and consider the grammar shown in Figure 9.13, which I have taken from the [Dragon Book](#) [[ASUL06](#)]. (The “Dragon Book” is the standard work in the field of compiler construction.)

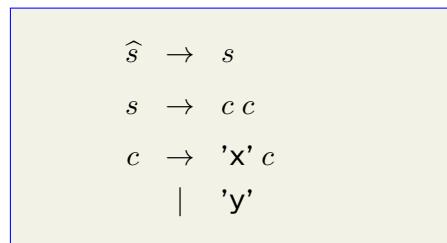


Figure 9.13: A grammar from the Dragon Book.



Figure 9.14: LR-goto-graph for the grammar of Figure 9.13.

Figure 9.14 shows the so-called **LR-goto-graph** for this grammar. The nodes of this graph are the states. Looking at the LR-goto-graph, we find that the states  $s_6$  and  $s_3$  differ only in the sets of follow tokens, as on one hand, we have

$$s_6 = \left\{ s \rightarrow 'x' \bullet c : '$', c \rightarrow \bullet 'x' c : '$', c \rightarrow \bullet 'y' : '$' \right\},$$

and on the other hand, we have

$$s_3 = \left\{ s \rightarrow 'x' \bullet c : \{'x', 'y'\}, c \rightarrow \bullet 'x' c : \{'x', 'y'\}, c \rightarrow \bullet 'y' : \{'x', 'y'\} \right\}.$$

Clearly, the set  $s_3$  is derived from the set  $s_6$  by replacing everywhere '\$' with the set {'x', 'y'}. Similarly, the set  $s_7$  can be transformed into  $s_4$ , and  $s_9$  into  $s_8$ . The crucial realization is that the function `goto()` is invariant under this kind of transformation, because in the definition of this function, the set of follow tokens is irrelevant. For example, we see that

$$\text{goto}(s_3, c) = s_8 \quad \text{and} \quad \text{goto}(s_6, c) = s_9$$

hold and that, on the other hand, the state  $s_9$  changes into the state  $s_8$  when we replace everywhere in  $s_9$  the terminal '\$' with the set {'x', 'y'}. If we define the **core** of a set of extended marked rules by omitting the set of follow tokens in each rule, and then combine states with the same core, we obtain the goto-graph shown in Figure 9.15.

To generalize and formalize the observations made while examining the grammar shown in Figure 9.13, we define a function `core()`, which calculates the core of a set of e.m.R.s (extended marked rules) and thus transforms this set into a set of marked rules:

$$\text{core}(\mathcal{M}) := \{a \rightarrow \beta \bullet \gamma \mid (a \rightarrow \beta \bullet \gamma : L) \in \mathcal{M}\}.$$

Thus, the function `core()` simply removes the set of follow tokens from the e.m.R.s. We had defined the function `goto()` for a set  $\mathcal{M}$  of extended marked rules and a symbol  $x$  as



Figure 9.15: The LALR-goto-graph for the grammar from Figure 9.13.

$$goto(\mathcal{M}, x) := closure\left(\{a \rightarrow \beta x \bullet \gamma : L \mid (a \rightarrow \beta \bullet x \gamma : L) \in \mathcal{M}\}\right).$$

Clearly, the set of follow tokens plays no role in the calculation of  $goto(\mathcal{M}, x)$ , formally for two e.m.R.-sets  $\mathcal{M}_1$  and  $\mathcal{M}_2$  and a symbol  $x$ , the formula holds:

$$\text{core}(\mathcal{M}_1) = \text{core}(\mathcal{M}_2) \Rightarrow \text{core}(goto(\mathcal{M}_1, x)) = \text{core}(goto(\mathcal{M}_2, x)).$$

For two sets of e.m.R.s (extended marked rules)  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{N}$  that have the same core, we define the **extended union**  $\mathcal{M} \uplus \mathcal{N}$  of  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $\mathcal{N}$  as

$$\mathcal{M} \uplus \mathcal{N} := \{a \rightarrow \beta \bullet \gamma : K \cup L \mid (a \rightarrow \beta \bullet \gamma : K) \in \mathcal{M} \wedge (a \rightarrow \beta \bullet \gamma : L) \in \mathcal{N}\}.$$

We generalize this definition to an operation  $\biguplus$ , defined on a set of sets of e.m.R.s: If  $\mathfrak{I}$  is a set of sets of e.m.R.s, all having the same core, i.e.,

$$\mathfrak{I} = \{\mathcal{M}_1, \dots, \mathcal{M}_k\} \quad \text{with} \quad \text{core}(\mathcal{M}_i) = \text{core}(\mathcal{M}_j) \quad \text{for all } i, j \in \{1, \dots, k\},$$

then we define

$$\biguplus \mathfrak{I} := \mathcal{M}_1 \uplus \dots \uplus \mathcal{M}_k.$$

Let  $\Delta$  be the set of all states of an LR parser. Then, the set of states of the corresponding LALR parser is given by the extended union of all subsets of  $\Delta$  whose elements have the same core:

$$\mathfrak{Q} := \left\{ \biguplus \mathfrak{I} \mid \mathfrak{I} \in 2^\Delta \wedge \forall \mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N} \in \mathfrak{I} : \text{core}(\mathcal{M}) = \text{core}(\mathcal{N}) \wedge \text{and } \mathfrak{I} \text{ is maximal} \right\}.$$

The requirement “ $\mathfrak{I}$  maximal” in the above definition expresses that in  $\mathfrak{I}$ , indeed all sets from  $\Delta$  are combined that have the same core. The thus defined set  $\mathfrak{Q}$  is the set of LALR states.

Next, we consider how the computation of  $goto(\mathcal{M}, X)$  must change if  $\mathcal{M}$  is an element of the set  $\mathfrak{Q}$  of LALR states. To compute  $goto(\mathcal{M}, X)$ , we first calculate the set

$$closure\left(\{a \rightarrow \alpha X \bullet \beta : L \mid (a \rightarrow \alpha \bullet X \beta : L) \in \mathcal{M}\}\right).$$

The problem is that this set is generally not an element of the set  $\mathfrak{Q}$ , as the states in  $\mathfrak{Q}$  arise from the combination of several LR states. However, the states that are combined in the computation of  $\mathfrak{Q}$  all have the same core. Therefore, the set

$$\left\{ q \in \mathfrak{Q} \mid \text{core}(q) = \text{core}(\text{closure}(\{a \rightarrow \beta X \bullet \gamma : L \mid (a \rightarrow \beta \bullet X \gamma : L) \in \mathcal{M}\})) \right\}$$

contains exactly one element and this element is the value of  $\text{goto}(\mathcal{M}, X)$ . Thus, we can set

$$\text{goto}(\mathcal{M}, X) := \text{arb}\left(\left\{ q \in \mathfrak{Q} \mid \text{core}(q) = \text{core}(\text{closure}(\{a \rightarrow \beta X \bullet \gamma : L \mid (a \rightarrow \beta \bullet X \gamma : L) \in \mathcal{M}\})) \right\}\right)$$

The function `arb()` used here serves to extract an arbitrary element from a set. Since the set from which the element is extracted contains exactly one element,  $\text{goto}(\mathcal{M}, x)$  is well-defined. The computation of the expression  $\text{action}(\mathcal{M}, t)$  does not change compared to the computation for an LR parser.

## 9.6 Comparison of SLR, LR, and LALR Parsers

We now want to compare the different methods with which we have constructed Shift-Reduce parsers in this chapter. We call a language  $\mathcal{L}$  an **SLR language** if  $\mathcal{L}$  can be recognized by an SLR parser. The terms **canonical LR language** and **LALR language** are defined analogously. The following relationships exist between these languages:

$$\text{SLR language} \subsetneq \text{LALR language} \subsetneq \text{canonical LR language} \quad (*)$$

These inclusions are easy to understand: In defining the LR parsers, we added sets of follow tokens to the marked rules. This made it possible to avoid Shift-Reduce and Reduce-Reduce conflicts in certain cases. As the state sets of canonical LR parsers can become very large, we then combined sets of extended marked rules that have the same core. This is how we obtained the LALR parsers. However, by combining rule sets, we can in some cases introduce Reduce-Reduce conflicts, so the set of LALR languages is a subset of the canonical LR languages.

We will show in the following subsections that the inclusions in  $(*)$  are proper.

### 9.6.1 SLR Language $\subsetneq$ LALR Language

The states of an LALR parser, as compared to those of an SLR parser, include sets of follow tokens. This makes LALR parsers at least as powerful as SLR parsers. We will now demonstrate that LALR parsers are indeed more powerful than SLR parsers. To support this claim, we present a grammar for which there exists an LALR parser, but no SLR parser. We had seen on page 136 that the grammar

$$\begin{aligned} s &\rightarrow a'x' a'y' \mid b'y' b'x' \\ a &\rightarrow \lambda \\ b &\rightarrow \lambda \end{aligned}$$

is not an SLR grammar. Later, we saw that this grammar can be parsed by a canonical LR parser. We will now show that this grammar can also be parsed by an LALR parser. To do this, we calculate the set of LALR states. This requires first calculating the set of canonical LR states. We had already carried out this calculation earlier and obtained the following states:

1.  $s_0 = \{\hat{s} \rightarrow \bullet s : \$, s \rightarrow \bullet a'x'a'y' : \$, s \rightarrow \bullet b'y'b'x' : \$, a \rightarrow \bullet : 'x', b \rightarrow \bullet : 'y'\},$
2.  $s_1 = \{s \rightarrow a \bullet 'x'a'y' : \$\},$
3.  $s_2 = \{\hat{s} \rightarrow s \bullet : \$\},$
4.  $s_3 = \{s \rightarrow b \bullet 'y'b'x' : \$\},$

$$5. s_4 = \{s \rightarrow b'y' \bullet b'x' : \$, b \rightarrow \bullet : 'x'\},$$

$$6. s_5 = \{s \rightarrow b'y'b \bullet 'x' : \$\},$$

$$7. s_6 = \{s \rightarrow b'y'b'x' \bullet : \$\},$$

$$8. s_7 = \{s \rightarrow a'x' \bullet a'y' : \$, a \rightarrow \bullet : 'y'\},$$

$$9. s_8 = \{s \rightarrow a'x'a \bullet 'y' : \$\},$$

$$10. s_9 = \{s \rightarrow a'x'a'y' \bullet : \$\}.$$

We observe that the cores of all the states listed here are different. Therefore, for this grammar, the set of states of the LALR parser coincides with the set of states of the canonical LR parser. This implies that there are no conflicts in the LALR states, because in the transition from canonical LR parsers to LALR parsers, we have only combined states with the same core, and the definition of the functions *goto()* and *action()* remained unchanged.

### 9.6.2 LALR Language $\subsetneq$ Canonical LR Language

We have defined LALR parsers by combining different states of a canonical LR parser. Therefore, it is clear that canonical LR parsers are at least as powerful as LALR parsers. To demonstrate that canonical LR parsers are indeed more powerful than LALR parsers, we need a grammar for which a canonical LR parser can be generated, but not an LALR parser. Figure 9.16 shows such a grammar, which I have taken from the Dragon Book.



Figure 9.16: A canonical LR grammar that is not an LALR grammar.

We first calculate the set of states for a canonical LR parser for this grammar. We obtain the following sets of extended marked rules:

$$1. s_0 = \text{closure}(\widehat{s} \rightarrow \bullet s : \$) = \{ \widehat{s} \rightarrow \bullet s : \$,$$

$$s \rightarrow \bullet 'v'a'y' : \$,$$

$$s \rightarrow \bullet 'v'b'z' : \$,$$

$$s \rightarrow \bullet 'w'a'z' : \$,$$

$$s \rightarrow \bullet 'w'b'y' : \$ \},$$

$$2. s_1 = \text{goto}(s_0, s) = \{\widehat{s} \rightarrow s \bullet : \$\}$$

3.  $s_2 = \text{goto}(s_0, 'v') = \{ s \rightarrow 'v' \bullet b'z' : \$, s \rightarrow 'v' \bullet a'y' : \$, a \rightarrow \bullet'x' : 'y', b \rightarrow \bullet'x' : 'z' \},$
4.  $s_3 = \text{goto}(s_0, 'w') = \{ s \rightarrow 'w' \bullet a'z' : \$, s \rightarrow 'w' \bullet b'y' : \$, a \rightarrow \bullet'x' : 'z', b \rightarrow \bullet'x' : 'y' \},$
5.  $s_4 = \text{goto}(s_2, 'x') = \{a \rightarrow 'x' \bullet : 'y', b \rightarrow 'x' \bullet : 'z'\},$
6.  $s_5 = \text{goto}(s_3, 'x') = \{a \rightarrow 'x' \bullet : 'z', b \rightarrow 'x' \bullet : 'y'\},$
7.  $s_6 = \text{goto}(s_2, a) = \{s \rightarrow 'v'a \bullet 'y' : \$\},$
8.  $s_7 = \text{goto}(s_6, 'y') = \{s \rightarrow 'v'a'y' \bullet : \$\},$
9.  $s_8 = \text{goto}(s_2, b) = \{s \rightarrow 'v'b \bullet 'z' : \$\},$
10.  $s_9 = \text{goto}(s_8, 'z') = \{s \rightarrow 'v'b'z' \bullet : \$\},$
11.  $s_{10} = \text{goto}(s_3, a) = \{s \rightarrow 'w'a \bullet 'z' : \$\},$
12.  $s_{11} = \text{goto}(s_{10}, 'z') = \{s \rightarrow 'w'a'z' \bullet : \$\},$
13.  $s_{12} = \text{goto}(s_3, b) = \{s \rightarrow 'w'b \bullet 'y' : \$\},$
14.  $s_{13} = \text{goto}(s_{12}, 'y') = \{s \rightarrow 'w'b'y' \bullet : \$\}.$

The only states where conflicts could occur are the sets  $s_4$  and  $s_5$ , as in these states, reductions with both rules

$$a \rightarrow 'x' \quad \text{and} \quad b \rightarrow 'x'$$

are potentially possible. However, since the sets of follow tokens have an empty intersection, there is actually no conflict, and the grammar is a canonical LR grammar.

Next, we calculate the LALR states for the grammar mentioned above. The only states that have a common core are  $s_4$  and  $s_5$ , as

$$\text{core}(s_4) = \{a \rightarrow 'x' \bullet, b \rightarrow 'x' \bullet\} = \text{core}(s_5).$$

In calculating the LALR states, these two states are combined into one state  $s_{\{4,5\}}$ . This new state takes the form

$$s_{\{4,5\}} = \{A \rightarrow 'x' \bullet : \{'y', 'z'\}, B \rightarrow 'x' \bullet : \{'y', 'z'\}\}.$$

Here, there is obviously a reduce-reduce conflict, as on one hand we have

$$\text{action}(s_{\{4,5\}}, 'y') = \langle \text{reduce}, A \rightarrow 'x' \rangle,$$

but on the other hand, it also holds that

$$\text{action}(s_{\{4,5\}}, 'y') = \langle \text{reduce}, B \rightarrow 'x' \rangle.$$

**Exercise 25:** Let  $G = \langle V, T, R, s \rangle$  be an LR grammar and  $\mathcal{N}$  be the set of LALR states of the grammar. Explain why there can be no shift-reduce conflicts in the set  $\mathcal{N}$ .  $\diamond$

**Historical Notes** The theory of LALR parsing is due to Franklin L. DeRemer [DeR71]. At the time of its invention, the space savings of LALR parsing in comparison to LR parsing were crucial. Franklin L. DeRemer also

### 9.6.3 Evaluation of the Different Methods

In practice, SLR parsers are not sufficient, as there are a number of practically relevant language constructs for which no SLR parser can be generated. Canonical LR parsers are much more powerful but often require significantly more states. LALR parsers represent a compromise here: on the one hand, LALR languages are almost as expressive as canonical LR languages, but on the other hand, the memory requirements of LALR parsers are in the same order of magnitude as those of SLR parsers. For example, the SLR parse table for the C language has a total of 349 states, the corresponding LR parse table has 1572 states, while the LALR parser manages with 350 states, thus only one state more than the SLR parser. In the main memories typically available today, however, canonical LR parsers can usually be accommodated without difficulty, so there is actually no compelling reason to use an LALR parser instead of an LR parser.

On the other hand, no one will want to program an LALR parser or a canonical LR parser by hand. Instead, you will later use a parser generator like `Ply` for *Python*, `Bison` for C, or `JavaCup` for Java. While `Ply` and `JavaCup` can only generate an LALR parser, `Bison` can also generate an LR parser.

## 9.7 Check your Understanding

- (a) What is the definition of a [shift-reduce parser](#) and how is the set *Action* defined?
- (b) How does a shift-reduce parser work?
- (c) How is the concept of a [marked rule](#) defined? How is a marked rule interpreted?
- (d) Can you compute the closure of a set of marked rules?
- (e) Are you able to define the functions `First` and `Follow` for an `SLR`-parser?
- (f) Are you able to compute the states of an `SLR`-parser?
- (g) Given the set of all states of an `SLR`-parser, can you compute both the action table and the goto table?
- (h) How is the concept of an [extended marked rule](#) defined?
- (i) Are you able to compute the closure of a set of extended marked rules?
- (j) Define the notion of shift/reduce and reduce/reduce conflicts for both `SLR`-parsers and for `LR`-parsers.
- (k) Why are `LR`-parser-generators more powerful than `SLR`-parser-generators?
- (l) How is the set of states reduced when we transform an `LR`-parser into an `LALR`-parser?

# Chapter 10

## Advanced Features of Ply

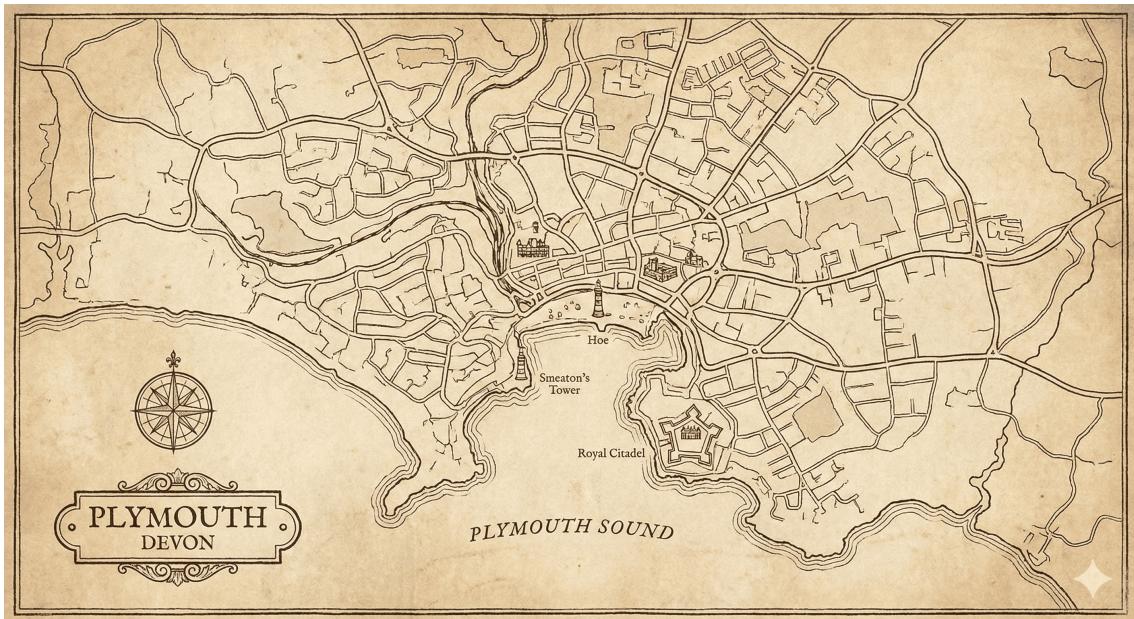


Figure 10.1: The mouth of Ply.

When we had discussed the parser generator PLY in chapter 7, we were not able to discuss all the features of PLY, since the underlying theory, which is the theory of LALR parsing, had not been developed. Since we have acquainted ourselves with this theory in the previous chapter, we are finally able to discuss some of the more advanced features of PLY.

1. First, we show how shift-reduce conflicts are presented in PLY.
2. Then we discuss how shift-reduce conflicts can be resolved with the help of [precedence declarations](#).

### 10.1 Shift-Reduce and Reduce-Reduce Conflicts

In this section we show how shift-reduce and reduce-reduce conflicts are dealt with in PLY. Figure 10.2 on page 149 shows a grammar for arithmetical expressions that is ambiguous because it does not

specify the precedence of the different arithmetical operators.

---

```

1   expr : expr '+' expr
2       | expr '*' expr
3       | NUMBER

```

---

Figure 10.2: An ambiguous grammar for arithmetical expressions.

This grammar does not specify whether the string

“ $1 + 2 * 3$ ” is interpreted as “ $(1 + 2) * 3$ ” or as “ $1 + (2 * 3)$ ”.

Since every LALR grammar is unambiguous, but the grammar shown in Figure 10.2 is ambiguous, it has to have at least one shift-reduce or reduce-reduce conflict. This grammar is part of the jupyter notebook

[Formal-Languages/tree/master/Python/Chapter-10/01-Conflicts.ipynb](#).

---

```

1   state 5
2
3       (1) expr -> expr + expr .
4       (1) expr -> expr . + expr
5       (2) expr -> expr . * expr
6
7       ! shift/reduce conflict for + resolved as shift
8       ! shift/reduce conflict for * resolved as shift
9       $end           reduce using rule 1 (expr -> expr + expr .)
10      +              shift and go to state 3
11      *              shift and go to state 4
12
13      ! +             [ reduce using rule 1 (expr -> expr + expr .) ]
14      ! *             [ reduce using rule 1 (expr -> expr + expr .) ]

```

---

Figure 10.3: An excerpt from the file parse.out.

When we try to generate a parser for this grammar using Ply's yacc command we get the message

WARNING: 4 shift/reduce conflicts.

The file parser.out that is generated by Ply shows how these conflicts are resolved. This file contains the LALR states created by the parser generator and for every state the possible actions are shown. Given the grammar shown above, Ply creates 6 different states. There are conflicts in two of these states. Figure 10.3 on page 149 shows state number 5 and its actions. We see that there are 2 shift-reduce conflicts in this state. Unfortunately, Ply only prints the marked rules defining these states, but it does not show the follow sets of these rules. We see that Ply resolves all conflicts in favour of shifting. The exclamation marks in the beginning of the line 13 and 14 are to be interpreted as negations and show those reduce actions that would have been possible in state 5, but are discarded in favour of the shift actions shown in line 10 and 11. Of course, in this example the shift action in line

10 is wrong because then the string

```
1 * 2 + 3
```

is interpreted as  $1 * (2 + 3)$  and not as  $(1 * 2) + 3$ .

## 10.2 Operator Precedence Declarations

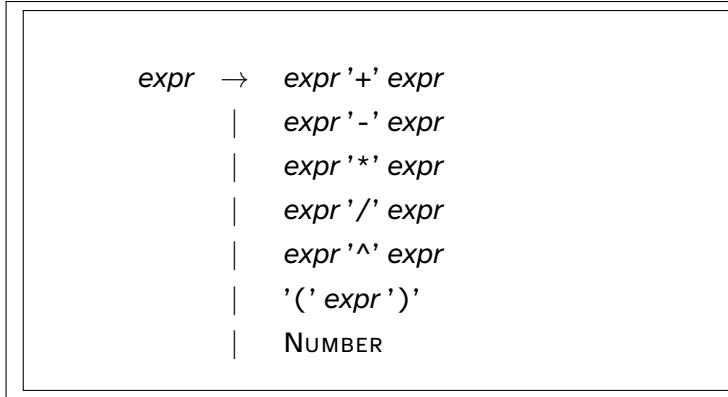


Figure 10.4: A grammar for arithmetical expressions.

It is possible to resolve shift-reduce conflicts using [operator precedence declarations](#). For example, for the grammar for arithmetical expressions shown in Figure 10.4 on page 150 we can use the following [operator precedence declarations](#):

```

precedence = ( ('Left', '+', '-'),    # precedence 1
               ('Left', '*', '/'),    # precedence 2
               ('right', '^')        # precedence 3
             )
  
```

This declaration specifies that the operators “+” and “-” have a lower precedence than the operators “\*” and “/”. Furthermore, it specifies that all these operators associate to the left. The operator “<sup>n</sup>” has the highest precedence and associates to the right as specified by the keyword “right”. The Jupyter notebook

[Formal-Languages/tree/master/Python/Chapter-10/02-Conflicts-Resolved.ipynb](#).

shows this grammar. When we run this notebook, PLY doesn’t give us a warning about any conflicts. If we inspect the generated file `parse.out`, the action table for the state number 11 has the form shown in Figure 10.5 on page 151.

1. Since the operators “+” and “-” have the same precedence, we have

```
action(state11, '+') = <reduce, expr → expr '-' expr>
```

This way, the expression  $1 - 2 + 3$  is parsed as  $(1 - 2) + 3$  and not as  $1 - (2 + 3)$  as it would if we would shift the operator “+” instead.

---

```

1 state 11
2
3     (2) expr -> expr - expr .
4     (1) expr -> expr . + expr
5     (2) expr -> expr . - expr
6     (3) expr -> expr . * expr
7     (4) expr -> expr . / expr
8     (5) expr -> expr . ^ expr
9
10    +
11    -
12    $end
13    )
14    *
15    /
16    ^
17
18    ! *
19    ! /
20    ! ^
21    ! +
22    ! -

```

reduce using rule 2 (expr -> expr - expr .)  
reduce using rule 2 (expr -> expr - expr .)  
reduce using rule 2 (expr -> expr - expr .)  
reduce using rule 2 (expr -> expr - expr .)  
shift and go to state 6  
shift and go to state 7  
shift and go to state 8

[ reduce using rule 2 (expr -> expr - expr .) ]  
[ reduce using rule 2 (expr -> expr - expr .) ]  
[ reduce using rule 2 (expr -> expr - expr .) ]  
[ shift and go to state 4 ]  
[ shift and go to state 5 ]

---

Figure 10.5: An excerpt from the file `parse.out` when conflicts are resolved.

2. Since the operator “-” is left associative, we have

$$\text{action(state11, ' - )} = \langle \text{reduce, expr} \rightarrow \text{expr}' -' \text{expr} \rangle$$

This way, the expression  $1 - 2 - 3$  is parsed as  $(1 - 2) - 3$ .

3. Since the precedence of the operator “\*” is higher than the precedence of the operator “-”, we have

$$\text{action(state11, ' * )} = \langle \text{shift, state6} \rangle$$

This way, the expression  $1 - 2 * 3$  is parsed as  $1 - (2 * 3)$ .

4. Since the precedence of the operator “/” is higher than the precedence of the operator “-”, we have

$$\text{action(state11, ' / )} = \langle \text{shift, state7} \rangle$$

This way, the expression  $1 - 2/3$  is parsed as  $1 - (2/3)$ .

Next, we explain in detail how PLY uses operator precedence relations to resolve shift-reduce conflicts.

1. First, PLY assigns a precedence level to every grammar rule. This precedence level is the precedence level of the last operator symbol occurring in the grammar rule. Most of the times, there is just one operator that determines the precedence of the grammar rule. In the grammar at hand the precedences of the rules would be as shown in the table below.

rule	precedence
$expr \rightarrow expr +' expr$	1
$expr \rightarrow expr -' expr$	1
$expr \rightarrow expr **' expr$	2
$expr \rightarrow expr /' expr$	2
$expr \rightarrow expr ^' expr$	3
$expr \rightarrow (' expr ')$	—
$expr \rightarrow NUMBER$	—

If a grammar rule does not contain an operator that has been given a precedence, then the precedence of the grammar rule remains undefined.

2. If  $s$  is a state that contains two e.m.R.s  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  such that

$$r_1 = (a \rightarrow \beta \bullet o \delta : L_1) \quad \text{and} \quad r_2 = (c \rightarrow \gamma \bullet : L_2) \quad \text{where} \quad o \in L_2,$$

then there is a shift-reduce conflict when

$$action(s, o)$$

is computed. Let us assume that the precedence of the operator  $o$  is  $p(o)$  and the precedence of the rule  $r_2$  is  $p(r_2)$ . Then there are six cases that depend on the relative values of  $p(o)$  and  $p(r_2)$  and on the associativity of the operator  $o$ .

- (a)  $p(o) > p(r_2)$ .

In this case the precedence of the operator  $o$  is higher than the precedence of the rule  $r_2$ . Therefore the operator  $o$  is shifted:

$$action(s, o) = \langle \text{shift}, \text{goto}(s, o) \rangle.$$

To understand this rule we just have to watch what happens when we parse

1+2\*3

using the grammar given above. After the part “1+2” has been read and the next token is the operator “\*”, the parser is in the following state:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} expr \rightarrow expr \bullet +' expr : \{\$\ , '+'\ , '-'\ , '**'\ , '/'\ , '^'\ \}, \\ expr \rightarrow expr \bullet -' expr : \{\$\ , '+'\ , '-'\ , '**'\ , '/'\ , '^'\ \}, \\ expr \rightarrow expr \bullet **' expr : \{\$\ , '+'\ , '-'\ , '*' , '/'\ , '^'\ \}, \\ expr \rightarrow expr \bullet /' expr : \{\$\ , '+'\ , '-' , '*' , '/'\ , '^'\ \}, \\ expr \rightarrow expr \bullet '^' expr : \{\$\ , '+'\ , '-' , '*' , '/'\ , '^'\ \}, \\ expr \rightarrow expr +' expr \bullet : \{\$\ , '+'\ , '-' , '*' , '/'\ , '^'\ \} \end{array} \right\}.$$

When the parser next sees the token “\*”, then it must not reduce the symbol stack using the rule  $expr \rightarrow expr +' expr$ , because it has to multiply the numbers 2 and 3 first. Therefore, the token “\*” has to be shifted.

- (b)  $p(o) < p(r_2)$ .

Now the precedence of the operator that occurs in the rule  $r_2$  is higher than the precedence of the operator  $o$ . Therefore the correct action is to reduce with the rule  $r_2$ :

$$action(s, o) = \langle \text{reduce}, r_2 \rangle.$$

To see that this makes sense we discuss the parsing of the expression

$1 * 2 + 3$

with the grammar given previously. Assume the string “ $1 * 2$ ” has already been read and the next token that is processed is the token “ $+$ ”. Then the state of the parser is as follows:

```
{ expr → expr • '+' expr : { $, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^' },
expr → expr • '-' expr : { $, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^' },
expr → expr • '*' expr : { $, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^' },
expr → expr • '/' expr : { $, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^' },
expr → expr • '^' expr : { $, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^' },
expr → expr • '*' expr • : { $, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^' } }
```

When the parser now sees the operator “ $+$ ”, it has to reduce the string “ $1 * 2$ ” using the rule

$\text{expr} \rightarrow \text{expr} '*' \text{expr}$ ,

as it has to multiply the numbers 1 and 2.

- (c)  $p(o) = p(r_2)$  and the operator  $o$  is left associative.

Then we reduce the symbol stack with the rule  $r_2$ , we have

$\text{action}(s, o) = \langle \text{reduce}, r_2 \rangle$ .

To convince yourself that this is the right thing to do, inspect what happens when the string

$1 - 2 - 3$

is parsed with the grammar discussed previously. Assume that the string “ $1 - 2$ ” has already be read and the next token is the operator “ $-$ ”. Then the state of the parser is as follows:

```
{ expr → expr • '+' expr : { $, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^' },
expr → expr • '-' expr : { $, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^' },
expr → expr • '*' expr : { $, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^' },
expr → expr • '/' expr : { $, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^' },
expr → expr • '^' expr : { $, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^' },
expr → expr • '-' expr • : { $, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^' } }
```

If the next token is the operator “ $-$ ”, then the parser has to reduce the symbol stack using the rule  $\text{expr} \rightarrow \text{expr} '-' \text{expr}$  as it has to subtract 2 from 1. If it would shift instead it would compute  $1 - (2 - 3)$  instead of computing  $(1 - 2) - 3$ .

- (d)  $p(o) = p(r_2)$  and the operator  $o$  associates to the right.

In this case the operator  $o$  is shifted

$\text{action}(s, o) = \langle \text{shift}, \text{goto}(s, o) \rangle$ .

In order to understand this case, parse the string

$2^3^4$

with the grammar rules

$\text{expr} \rightarrow \text{expr} ^ \text{expr} \mid \text{NUMBER}$ .

Consider the situation when the string “ $1^2$ ” has already been read and the next token is the exponentiation operator “ $^$ ”. The state of the parser is then as follows:

```
{
    expr → expr • '+' expr : {$, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^'},
    expr → expr • '-' expr : {$, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^'},
    expr → expr • '*' expr : {$, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^'},
    expr → expr • '/' expr : {$, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^'},
    expr → expr • '^' expr : {$, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^'},
    expr → expr '^' expr • : {$, '+', '-', '*', '/', '^'} }.
```

Here the token ' $^$ ' has to be shifted since we first have to compute the expression " $3^4$ ".

- (e)  $p(o) = p(r_2)$  and the operator  $o$  has been declared to be non-associative.

In this case we have a syntax error:

$$\text{action}(s, o) = \text{error}.$$

To understand this case, try to parse a string of the form

1 < 1 < 1

using the grammar rules

$$\text{expr} \rightarrow \text{expr}'<' \text{expr} \mid \text{expr}'+' \text{expr} \mid \text{NUMBER}.$$

Once the string "1 < 1" has been read and the next token is the operator "<" the parser recognizes that there is an error. Therefore, PLY will resolve this shift-reduce conflict by putting an error entry into the action table.

- (f)  $p(o)$  is undefined or  $p(r_2)$  is undefined.

In this case there is a shift-reduce conflict and PLY prints a warning message when generating the parser. The conflict is then resolved in favour of shifting.

## 10.3 Resolving Shift-Reduce and Reduce-Reduce Conflicts

We start our discussion by categorizing conflicts with respect to their origin.

1. *Ambiguity Conflicts* are conflicts that originate from an ambiguity in the underlying grammar. Such conflicts therefore indicate an actual problem with the grammar. We saw an example of such conflicts when we tried in Figure 10.2 to describe the syntax of arithmetic expressions without the syntactic categories *product* and *factor*.

We had already seen back then that we can solve the problem by introducing operator precedences. If this is not possible, then the only remaining option is rewriting the grammar.

2. *Look-Ahead Conflicts* are Reduce-Reduce conflicts where the grammar is technically unambiguous, but for which a look-ahead of one token is insufficient to resolve the conflict.
3. *Mysterious Conflicts* arise only during the transition from LR states to LALR states by merging states with the same core. These conflicts therefore occur precisely when the concept of an LALR grammar is insufficient to describe the syntax of the language to be parsed.

We will now look at the last two cases in detail and show ways in which the conflicts can be resolved.

### 10.3.1 Look-Ahead Conflicts

A Look-Ahead Conflict exists when the grammar is unambiguous, but a look-ahead of one token is insufficient to decide which rule should be used for reduction. Figure 10.6 shows the grammar

[Look-Ahead.ipynb](#)<sup>1</sup>, which, although unambiguous, does not possess the LR(1) property and is therefore certainly not an LALR(1) grammar.

---

```

1   a : b 'U' 'V'
2   | c 'U' 'W'
3   b : 'X'
4   c : 'X'
```

---

Figure 10.6: An unambiguous grammar without the LR(1) property.

If we calculate the LR states of this grammar, we find, among others, the following state:

$$\{b \rightarrow 'X'\bullet : 'U', c \rightarrow 'X'\bullet : 'U'\}.$$

Since the set of follow tokens is the same for both rules, we have a Reduce-Reduce conflict here. This conflict is caused by the fact that the parser, with a look-ahead of only one token, cannot decide whether an 'X' should be interpreted as a *b* or as a *c*, because this is only decided when the character following 'U' is read: If this is a 'V', then the rule

$$a \rightarrow b 'U' 'V'$$

will be used overall, and consequently the 'X' is to be interpreted as a *b*. If, however, the second token after the 'X' is a 'W', then the rule to be used is

$$a \rightarrow c 'U' 'W'$$

and consequently the 'X' is to be read as *c*.

---

```

1   a : b 'V'
2   | c 'W'
3   b : 'X' 'U'
4   c : 'X' 'U'
```

---

Figure 10.7: An LR(1) grammar equivalent to Figure 10.6.

The problem with this grammar is that it attempts to interpret an 'X' either as a *b* or as a *c* depending on the context. It is obvious how the problem can be solved: If the context "U", which follows both *b* and *c*, is included in the rules for *b* and *c*, then the conflict disappears, because then the state in which the conflict previously occurred has the form

$$\{b \rightarrow 'X' 'U'\bullet : 'V', c \rightarrow 'X' 'U'\bullet : 'W'\}.$$

Here, the next token decides which rule we must reduce with in this state: If the next token is a 'V', we reduce with the rule

$$b \rightarrow 'X' 'U',$$

if, however, the next token is the letter 'W', we take the rule

---

<sup>1</sup>I found this grammar on the web on Pete Jinks' page at the address

<http://www.cs.man.ac.uk/~pj/j/cs212/ho/node19.html>

$c \rightarrow 'X' 'U'\bullet : 'W'$

instead. Figure 10.7 shows the correspondingly modified grammar, which you can find at [Formal-Languages/tree/master/Python/Chapter-10/Look-Ahead-Solved.ipynb](#) on the web.

### 10.3.2 Mysterious Reduce-Reduce Conflicts

A conflict is called a [mysterious reduce-reduce conflict](#) if the conflict results from the merger of states that happens when we go from an LR parsing table to an LALR parsing table. The grammar in Figure 10.8 on page 156 is the same as the grammar shown in Figure 9.16 on page 145 in the previous chapter. Then we had seen that this grammar is an LR grammar, but not an LALR grammar. Let us see what happens if we use PLY to generate the states for this grammar.

---

```

1   s : 'v' a 'y'
2       | 'w' b 'y'
3       | 'v' b 'z'
4       | 'w' a 'z'
5
6   a : X
7
8   b : X

```

---

Figure 10.8: A grammar that generates a mysterious reduce-reduce conflict.

When we run PLY to produce the parsing table, we get the states shown in Figure 10.9 on page 157. This Figure only shows two states, state 6 and state 9. I have taken the liberty to annotate the extended marked rules occurring in these states with their follow sets. Taken by itself, none of these two states has a conflict since the follow sets of the respective rules are disjoint. However, it is obvious that these two states have the same core and should have been merged. The resulting state would have the form

$$\{a \rightarrow X\bullet : \{'y', 'z'\}, b \rightarrow X\bullet : \{'y', 'z'\}\}$$

and obviously has a reduce-reduce conflict if the next token is either 'y' or 'z'.

Interestingly, PLY does not merge these states and is therefore able to generate a parse table without conflicts. On the other hand, PLY claims to generate LALR tables. Therefore, I have written an email to [David Beazley](#) asking whether this behaviour is a feature or a bug. He has classified this example as an “*interesting curiosity*”.

---

```

1 state 6
2
3 (5) a -> X . : 'y'
4 (6) b -> X . : 'z'
5
6 y reduce using rule 5 (a -> X .)
7 z reduce using rule 6 (b -> X .)
8
9 state 9
10
11 (6) b -> X . : 'y'
12 (5) a -> X . : 'z'
13
14 y reduce using rule 6 (b -> X .)
15 z reduce using rule 5 (a -> X .)

```

---

Figure 10.9: A grammar that generates a mysterious reduce-reduce conflict.

**Exercise 26:** Use PLY to implement a *Python* parser that is able to evaluate formulas from propositional logic. The language should support the operators

- “ $\equiv$ ” (equivalence),
- “ $\rightarrow$ ” (implication),
- “ $|$ ” (disjunction),
- “ $\&$ ” (conjunction), and
- “ $!$ ” (negation).

The precedences and associativities are defined as follows:

1. The operator “ $!$ ” binds stronger than the operator “ $\&$ ”.
2. The operator “ $\&$ ” binds stronger than the operator “ $|$ ”.
3. The operators “ $|$ ” and “ $\&$ ” are both left associative.
4. The operator “ $\rightarrow$ ” associates to the right and binds weaker than the operator “ $|$ ”.
5. The operator “ $\equiv$ ” is not associative and binds weaker than the operator “ $\rightarrow$ ”.

Furthermore, the language should support parenthesis, variables, and the constants “ $\top$ ” and “ $\perp$ ”.

# Chapter 11

## Assembler



Figure 11.1: Jasmin.

A compiler translates programs written in a high level language like C or Java into some low level representation. This low level representation can be either machine code or some form of assembler code. For the programming language [Java](#), the command `javac` compiles a program written in Java into Java byte code. This byte code is then executed using the [Java virtual machine](#) (JVM).

The compiler that we are going to develop in the next chapter generates a particular form of assembler code known as [Jvm assembler code](#). This assembler code can be translated directly into [Java byte code](#), which is also the byte code generated by the program [javac](#). The program for translating

JVM assembler into bytecode is called *Jasmin*. You can download *Jasmin* at

<http://sourceforge.net/projects/jasmin>.

*Jasmin* takes an byte code produced by *Jasmin* can be executed using the command `java` just like any other “`.class`”-file. This chapter will discuss the syntax and semantics of *Jasmin* assembler code. *Jasmin* is discussed in more detail in the book *Java Virtual Machine* [MD97].

By the way, Java isn’t the only programming language that is translated into Java Byte code. Here is a list of some of the better known programming languages that use the JVM architecture.

1. **Kotlin** is developed by [JetBrains](#). It is fully interoperable with Java and compiles to JVM bytecode. It is widely used in [Android](#) development as a replacement for Java.  
As of November 2025, *Kotlin* occupies the 20<sup>th</sup> place in the [Tiobe index](#).
2. **Scala** blends functional and object-oriented programming paradigms. Scala compiles to JVM bytecode and is often used for concurrent and distributed applications.  
Currently, *Scala* occupies the 35<sup>th</sup> place in the [Tiobe index](#).
3. **Groovy** is a dynamic scripting language that is easy to learn for Java programmers because its syntax is close to Java. It is often used in scripting, configuration, and in build systems like [Gradle](#).
4. **Clojure** is a modern Lisp dialect designed for functional programming. It compiles to JVM bytecode and supports concurrency.
5. **JRuby** is a JVM-based version of the [Ruby](#) programming language. It is fully compatible with *Ruby* but additionally support the use Java libraries.
6. **Jython** is a JVM-based version of [Python](#) version 2.7.
7. **Frege** is a version of the pure functional language [Haskell](#) that compiles to JVM bytecode.

The main reason these languages compile to the JVM is to take advantage of Java’s rich library ecosystem. Another reason is the fact that compiling a language to the JVM makes this language available for all those hardware platforms that support Java.

## 11.1 Introduction into Jasmin Assembler

To get used to the syntax of *Jasmin* assembler, we start with a small program that prints the string  
“Hello World!”

on the standard output stream. Figure 11.2 on page 160 shows the program [Hello.jas](#). We discuss this program line by line.

1. Line 1 uses the directive “`.class`” to define the name of the class file that is to be produced by the assembler. In this case, the class name is `Hello`. Therefore, *Jasmin* will translate this file into the class file “`Hello.class`”.
2. Line 2 uses the directive “`.super`” to specify the super class of the class `Hello`. In our examples, the super class will always be the class `Object`. Since this class resides in the package “`java.lang`”, the super class has to be specified as

```

1 .class public Hello
2 .super java/lang/Object

3
4 .method public <init>()V
5     aload 0
6     invokespecial java/lang/Object/<init>()V
7     return
8 .end method

9
10 .method public static main([Ljava/lang/String;)V
11     .limit locals 1
12     .limit stack 2
13     getstatic    java/lang/System/out Ljava/io/PrintStream;
14     ldc         "Hello World!"
15     invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream/println(Ljava/lang/String;)V
16     return
17 .end method

```

Figure 11.2: An assembler program to print “Hello World!”.

java/lang/Object.

Observe that the character “.” in the class name “java.lang.Object” has to be replaced by the character “/”. This is true even if a *Windows* operating system is used.

3. The lines 4 – 8 initialize the program. This code is always the same and corresponds to a constructor for the class Hello. It is equivalent to the following Java code:

```

1  public Hello() {
2      super(); // Calls the constructor of java.lang.Object
3 }

```

As this code is copied verbatim to the beginning of every class file, we will not discuss it further.

4. The lines 10 – 17 defines the method main that does the actual work.

- (a) Line 10 uses the directive “.method” to declare the name of the method and its signature. The string

`main([Ljava/lang/String;)V`

specifies the signature:

- i. The string “main” is the name of the method that is defined.
- ii. The character “[” specifies that the first argument is an array.
- iii. The character “L” specifies that this array consists of objects.

- iv. The string “java/lang/String;” specifies that these objects are objects of the class “java.lang.String”.
  - v. Finally, the character “V” specifies that the return type of the method main is “void”.
- (b) Line 11 uses the directive “`.limit locals`” to specify the number of local variables used by the method main. In this case, there is just one local variable. This variable corresponds to the parameter of the method main. The assembler file shown in Figure 11.2 on page 160 corresponds to the Java code shown in Figure 11.3 below. The method main has one local variable, which is the parameter args. The information on the number of local variables is needed by the Java virtual machine in order to allocate memory for these variables on the stack.

```

1  public static void main(String[] args) {
2      System.out.println("Hello World!");
3 }
```

Figure 11.3: Printing Hello world in Java.

- (c) For the purpose of the following discussion, we assume that there exist two types of processors: Those that store the objects they work upon in registers and those that store these objects on a stack residing in main memory. The Java virtual machine is of the second type. Hence, Jasmin assembler programs do not refer to registers but rather refer to this stack<sup>1</sup>. Line 12 uses the directive

`“.limit stack”`

to specify the maximal height of the stack. In this case, the stack is allowed to contain a maximum of two objects. It is easy to see that we indeed do never place more than two objects onto the stack, since the command `getstatic` in line 13 pushes the object

`java.lang.System.out`

onto the stack. This is an object of class “`java.io.PrintStream`”. Then, the command `Ldc` in line 14 pushes a reference to the string “Hello World” onto the stack. The other instructions do not push anything onto the stack.

- (d) Line 15 calls the method `println`, which is a method of the class “`java.io.PrintStream`”. Therefore, we first have to put an object of this class onto the stack. This object is the object `java.lang.System.out` that was pushed on the stack using the method `getstatic` in line 13.

Line 15 also specifies that `println` takes one argument of type `java.lang.String` and that it returns `void`, i.e. nothing.

- (e) Line 16 returns from the method `main`.

- (f) In line 17 the directive “`.end`” marks the end of the code corresponding to the method `main`.

<sup>1</sup>In reality, all real processors make use of registers. However, it is possible to simulate a stack machine using a real processor and that is what is done in the Java virtual machine.

Before we proceed, let us assume that we are working on a Unix operating system and that there is an executable file called `jasmin` somewhere in our path that contains the following code:

```
#!/bin/bash
java -jar /usr/local/lib/jasmin.jar $@
```

Of course, for this to work the directory `/usr/local/lib/` has to contain the file “`jasmin.jar`”. If we were working on a Windows operating system, we would have a file called `jasmin.bat` somewhere in our PATH. This file would contain the following line:

```
java -jar %USERPROFILE%\Software\jasmin-2.4\jasmin.jar %*
```

Of course, for this to work the directory `%USERPROFILE%\Software\jasmin-2.4` has to contain the file “`jasmin.jar`”.

In order to execute the assembler program discussed above, we first have to translate the assembler program into a `class`-file. This is done using the command

```
jasmin Hello.jas
```

Executing this command creates the file “`Hello.class`”. This class file can then be executed just like any class file generated from `javac` by typing

```
java Hello
```

in the command line, provided the environment variable `CLASSPATH` contains the current directory, i.e. the `CLASSPATH` has to contain the directory “`.`”.

We will proceed to discuss the different assembler commands in more detail later. To this end, we first have to discuss some background: One of the design goal of the programming language Java was compatibility. The idea was that it should be possible to execute Java class files on any computer. Therefore, the Java designers decided to create a so called *virtual machine*. A virtual machine is a computer architecture that, instead of being implemented in silicon, is simulated. Programs written in Java are first compiled into so called *class files*. These class files correspond to the machine code of the Java virtual machine (JVM). The architecture of the virtual machine is a *stack machine*. A stack machine does not have any registers to store variables. Instead, there is a stack and all variables reside on the stack. Every command takes its arguments from the top of the stack and replaces these arguments with the result of the operation performed by the command. For example, if we want to add two values, then we first have to push both values onto the stack. Next, performing the add operation will pop these values from the stack and then push their sum onto the stack.

## 11.2 Assembler Instructions

We proceed to discuss some of the JVM instructions. Since there are more than 160 JVM instructions, we can only discuss a subset of all instructions. We restrict ourselves to those instructions that deal with integers: For example, there is an instruction called `iadd` that adds two 32 bit integers. There are also instructions like `fadd` that adds two floating point numbers and `dadd` that adds two double precision floating point numbers but, since our time is limited, we won’t discuss these instructions. Before we are able to discuss the different instructions we have to discuss how the main memory is organized in the JVM: In the JVM, the memory is split into four parts:

1. The *program memory* contains the program code as a sequence of bytes.

2. The operands of the different machine instructions are put onto the **stack**. Furthermore, the stack contains the arguments and the local variables of a procedure. However, in the context of the JVM the procedures are called *methods* instead of procedures.

The register SP (**stack pointer**) points to the top of the stack. If a method is called, the arguments of the method are placed on the stack. The register LV (**local variables**) points to the first argument of the current method. On top of the arguments, the local variables of the method are put on the stack. Both the arguments and the local variables can be accessed via the register LV by specifying their offset from the first argument. We will discuss the register LV in more detail when we discuss the invocation of methods.

3. The **heap** is used for dynamically allocated memory. Newly created objects are located in the heap.
4. The **constant pool** contains the definitions of constants and also the addresses of methods in program memory.

Figure 11.4 shows the memory structure of the JVM. In the following, we will be mostly concerned with the stack. We proceed to discuss some of the assembler instructions.

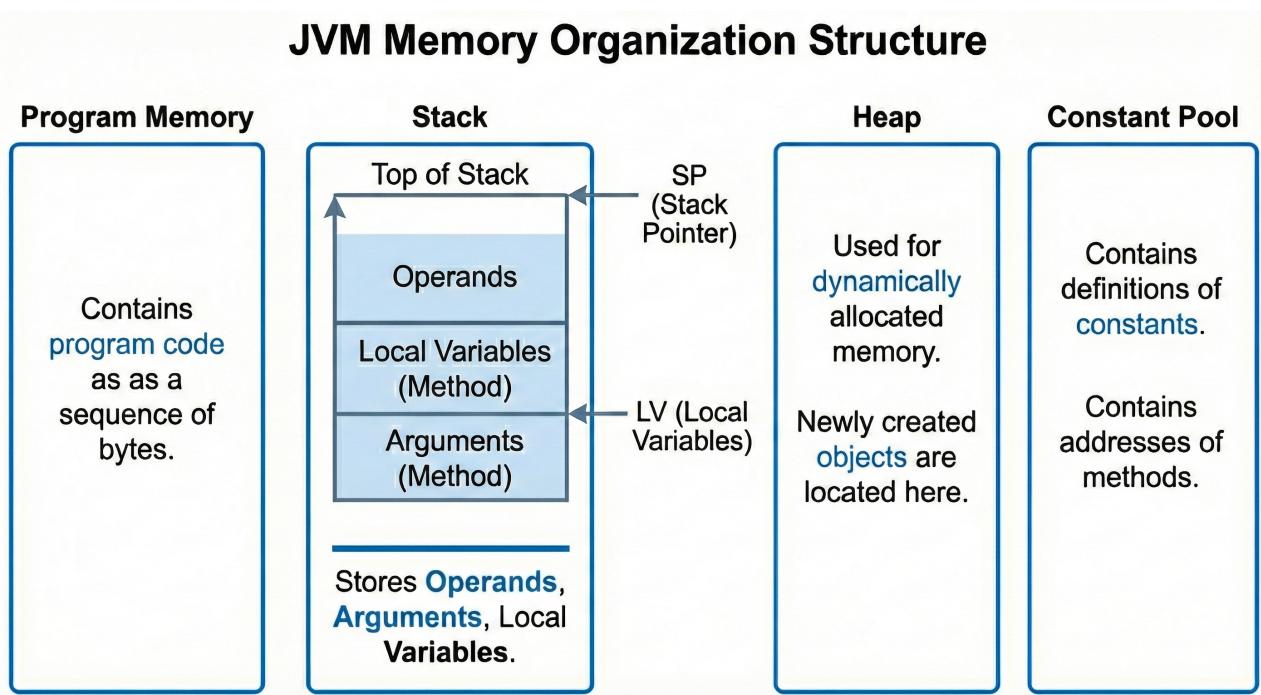


Figure 11.4: The memory structure of the JVM.

### Arithmetical and Logical Instructions

1. The instruction “iadd” adds those values that are on top of the stack and replaces these values by their sum. Figure 11.5 on page 164 show how this command works. The left part of the figure shows the stack as it is before the command iadd is executed, while the right part of the figure depicts the situation after the execution of this command. Note that after the command is

executed, the stack pointer points to the position where formerly the first argument had been stored.

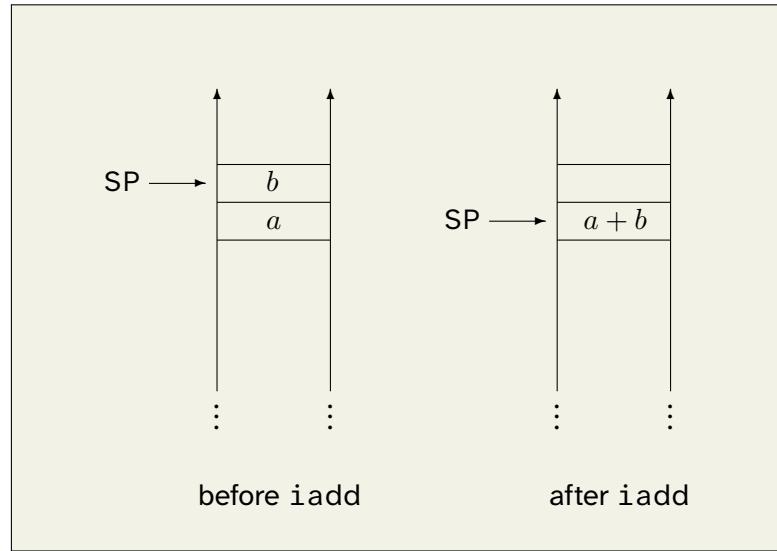


Figure 11.5: The effect of iadd.

2. The instruction “isub” subtracts the integer value on top of the stack from the value that is found on the position next to the top of the stack. Figure 11.6 on page 164 pictures this command. The left part of the figure shows the stack as it is before the command isub is executed, while the right part of the figure depicts the situation after the execution of this command. Note that after the command is executed, the stack pointer points to the position where formerly the first argument had been stored.

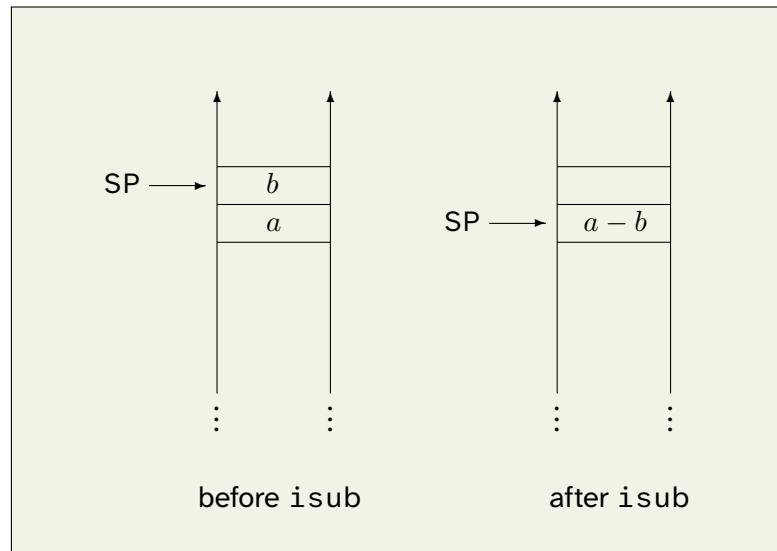


Figure 11.6: The effect of isub.

3. The instruction “imul” multiplies the two integer values which are on top of the stack. This

instruction works similar to the instruction `iadd`. If the product does not fit in 32 bits, only the lowest 32 bits of the result are written onto the stack.

4. The instruction “`idiv`” divides the integer value that is found on the position next to the top of the stack by the value on top of the stack.

**Note:** Integer division in *Java* is different from integer division in *Python*. In *Python*, integer division is always rounded down (i.e. rounded to negative infinity), while integer division in *Java* rounds towards 0. While there is no difference for natural numbers, we have  $-5 / 2 = -2$  in *Java*, while we have  $-5 // 2 = -3$  in *Python*.<sup>2</sup>.

5. The instruction “`irem`” computes the remainder  $a \% b$  of the division of  $a$  by  $b$  where  $a$  and  $b$  are integer values found on top of the stack.

Again, it is important to note that the *Java* implementation of  $a \% b$  differs from the implementation in *Python*. For example, in *Java* we have  $-5 \% 3 = -2$ , while we have  $-5 \% 3 = 1$  in *Python*.

6. The instruction “`iand`” computes the bitwise “and” of the values on top of the stack.
7. The instruction “`ior`” computes the bitwise “or” of the integer values that are on top of the stack.
8. The instruction “`ixor`” computes the bitwise “*exclusive or*” of the integer values that are on top of the stack.

## Shift Instructions

1. The instruction “`ishl`” shifts the value  $a$  to the left by  $b[4:0]$  bits. Here,  $a$  and  $b$  are assumed to be the two values on top of the stack:  $b$  is the value on top of the stack and  $a$  is the value below  $b$ .  $b[4:0]$  denotes the natural number that results from the 5 lowest bits of  $b$ . Figure 11.7 on page 166 pictures this command.
2. The instruction “`ishr`” shifts the value  $a$  to the right by  $b[4:0]$  bits. Here,  $a$  and  $b$  are assumed to be the two values on top of the stack:  $b$  is the value on top of the stack and  $a$  is the value below  $b$ .  $b[4:0]$  denotes the natural number that results from the 5 lowest bits of  $b$ . Note that this instruction performs an *arithmetic shift*, i.e. the sign bit is preserved.

### 11.2.1 Instructions to Manipulate the Stack

1. The instruction “`dup`” duplicates the value that is on top of the stack. Figure 11.8 on page 166 pictures this command.
2. The instruction “`pop`” removes the value that is on top of the stack. Figure 11.9 on page 167 pictures this command. The value is not actually erased from memory, only the stack pointer is decremented. The next instruction that puts a new value onto the stack will therefore overwrite the old value.
3. The instruction “`nop`” does nothing. The name is short for “no operation”.

---

<sup>2</sup>In mathematics, integer division, which is also known as *Euclidean division* is defined in the same way as it is implemented in *Python*. The different implementation of this operator in *Java* is mostly a reflection of the poor educational standards of the United States of America.

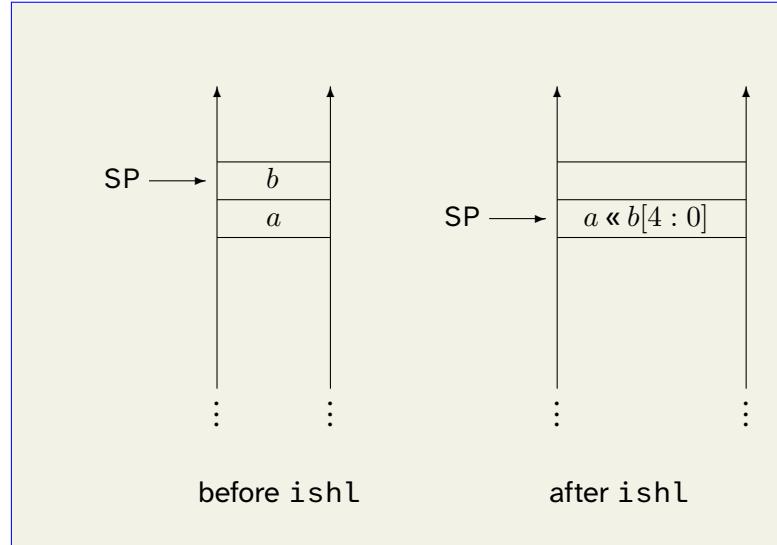


Figure 11.7: The effect of ishl.

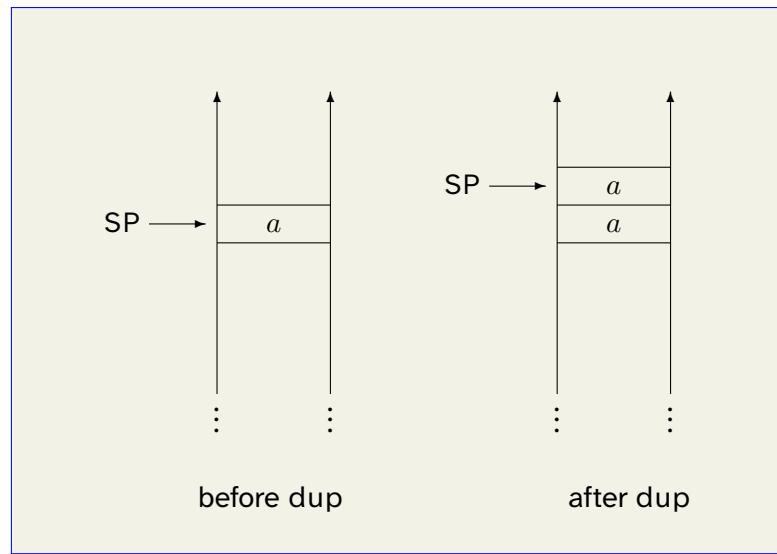


Figure 11.8: The effect of dup.

4. The instruction “`bipush b`” pushes the byte  $b$  that is given as argument onto the stack. The argument  $b$  is constricted to a byte in order to limit the number of bytes that are needed to represent this instruction in memory. Figure 11.10 on page 167 pictures this command.
5. The instruction “`getstatic v c`” takes two parameters:  $v$  is the name of a static variable and  $c$  is the type of this variable. For example,

```
getstatic java/lang/System/out Ljava/io/PrintStream;
```

pushes a reference to the `PrintStream` that is known as

```
java.lang.System.out
```

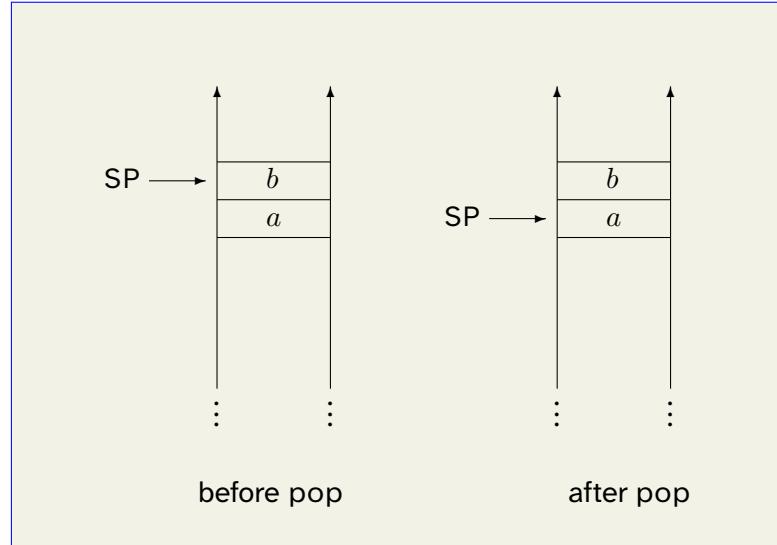


Figure 11.9: The effect of pop.

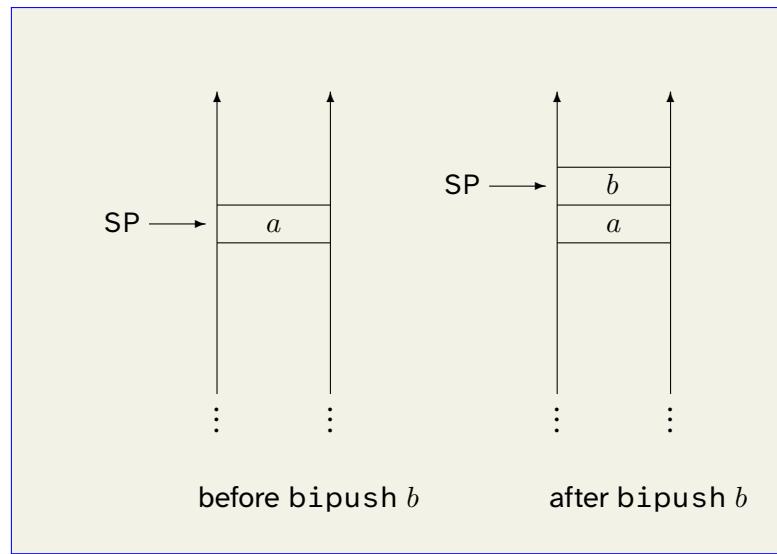
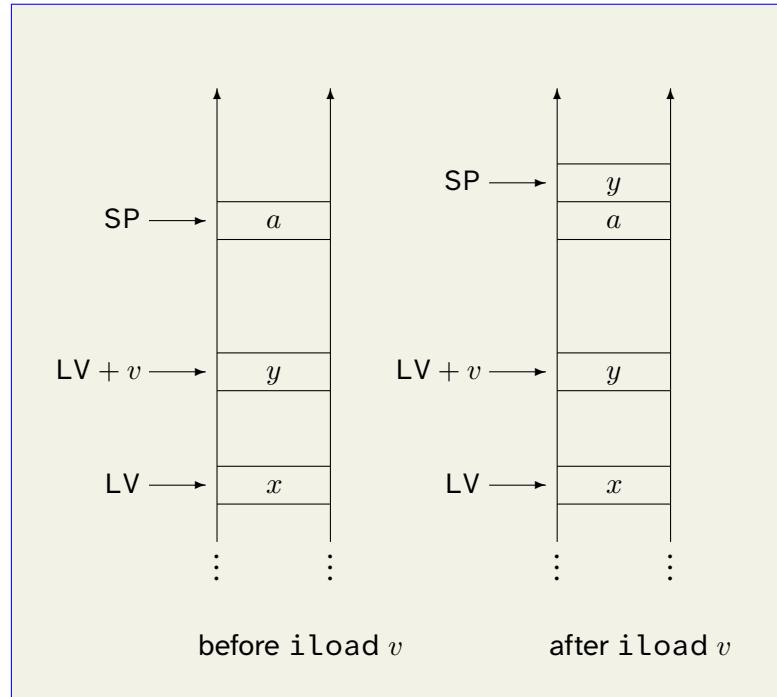
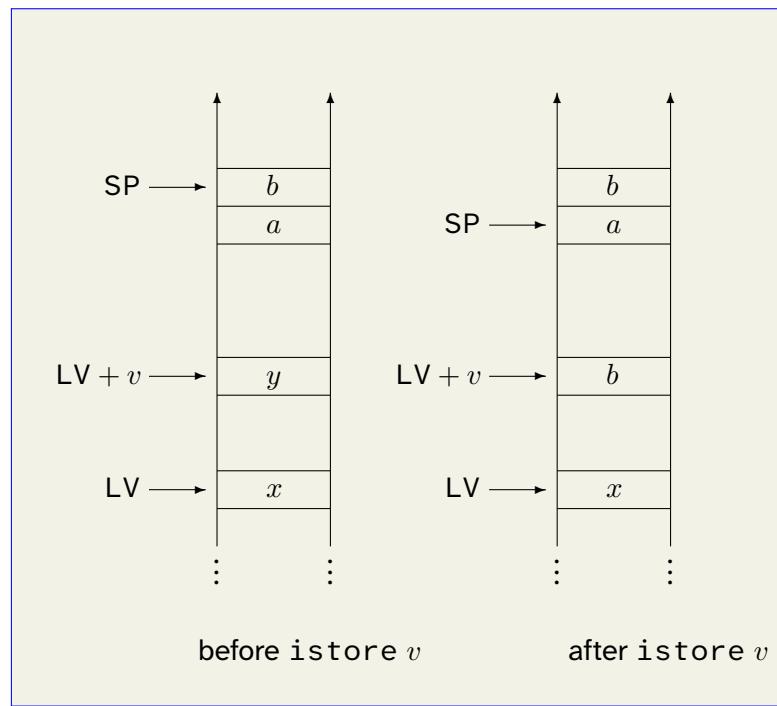


Figure 11.10: The effect of bipush b.

onto the stack.

6. The instruction “`iload v`” reads the local variable with index  $v$  and pushes it on top of the stack. Figure 11.11 on page 168 pictures this command. Note that LV denotes the register pointing to the beginning of the local variables of a method.
7. The instruction “`istore v`” removes the value which is on top of the stack and stores this value at the location for the local variable with number  $v$ . Hence,  $v$  is interpreted as an index into the local variable table of the method. Figure 11.12 on page 168 pictures this command.
8. The instruction “`ldc c`” pushes the constant  $c$  onto the stack. This constant can be an integer, a single precision floating point number, or a (pointer to) a string. If  $c$  is a string, this string is

Figure 11.11: The effect of `iload v`.Figure 11.12: The effect of `istore v`.

actually stored in the so called *constant pool* and in this case the command “`Ldc c`” will only push a pointer to the string onto the stack.

## Branching Commands

In this subsection we discuss those commands that change the control flow.

1. The instruction “`goto l`” jumps to the **label** *l*. Here the label *l* is a label name that has to be declared inside the method containing this `goto` command. A label with name *target* is declared using the syntax

```
target:
```

The next section presents an example assembler program that demonstrates this command.

2. The instruction “`if_icmpeq l`” checks whether the value on top of the stack is the same as the value preceding it. If this is the case, the program will branch to the label *l*. Otherwise, the control flow is not changed. Observe that both values that are compared are removed from the stack.
3. The instruction “`if_icmpne l`” checks whether the value on top of the stack is different from the value preceding it. If this is the case, the program will branch to the label *l*. Otherwise, the control flow is not changed. Observe that both values that are compared are removed from the stack.
4. The instruction “`if_icmplt l`” checks whether the value that is below the top of the stack is less than the value on top of the stack. If this is the case, the program will branch to the label *l*. Otherwise, the control flow is not changed. Observe that both values that are compared are removed from the stack.
5. The instruction “`if_icmple l`” checks whether the value that is below the top of the stack is less or equal than the value on top of the stack. If this is the case, the program will branch to the label *l*. Otherwise, the control flow is not changed. Observe that both values that are compared are removed from the stack.

There are similar commands called `if_icmpgt` and `if_icmpge`.

6. The instruction “`ifeq l`” checks whether the value on top of the stack is zero. If this is the case, the program will branch to the label *l*. Otherwise, the control flow is not changed. Observe that the value that is tested is removed from the stack.
7. The instruction “`iflt l`” checks whether the value on top of the stack is less than zero. If this is the case, the program will branch to the label *l*. Otherwise, the control flow is not changed. Observe that the value that is tested is removed from the stack.
8. The instruction “`invokevirtual m`” is used to call the method *m*. Here *m* has to specify the full name of the method. For example, in order to invoke the method `println` of the class `java.io.PrintStream` we have to write:

```
invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream/println(I)V
```

Before the command `invokevirtual` is executed, we have to put the arguments of the method onto the stack. For example, if we want to invoke the method `println` that takes an integer argument, we first have to push an object of type `PrintStream` onto the stack. Furthermore, we need to push an integer onto the stack.

9. The instruction “`invokestatic m`” is used to call the method *m*. Here *m* has to specify the full name of the method. Furthermore, *m* needs to be a static method. For example, in order to invoke a method called *sum* that resides in the class *Sum* and that takes one integer argument we have to write:

```
invokestatic Sum/sum(I)I
```

In the type specification “*sum(I)I*” the first “*I*” specifies that *sum* takes one integer argument, while the second “*I*” specifies that the method *sum* returns an integer.

Before the command `invokestatic` is executed, we have to put the arguments of the method onto the stack. For example, if we want to invoke the method *sum* described above, then we have to push an integer *n* onto the stack. After the method returns, this integer is replaced with the return value *sum(n)*.

10. The instruction “`ireturn`” returns from the method that is currently invoked. This method also returns a value to the calling procedure. In order for `ireturn` to be able to return a value *v*, this value *v* has to be pushed onto the stack before the command `ireturn` is executed.

In general, if a method taking *n* arguments *a<sub>1</sub>*, …, *a<sub>n</sub>* is to be called, then first the arguments *a<sub>1</sub>*, …, *a<sub>n</sub>* have to be pushed onto the stack. When the method *m* is done and has computed its result *r*, the arguments *a<sub>1</sub>*, …, *a<sub>n</sub>* will have been replaced with the single value *r*.

11. The instruction “`return`” returns from the method that is currently invoked. However, in contrast to the command `ireturn`, this command is used if the method that has been invoked does not return a result.

## 11.3 An Example Program

Figure 11.13 shows the C program `sum.c` that computes the sum

$$\sum_{i=1}^{6^2} i.$$

The function `sum(n)` computes the sum  $\sum_{i=1}^n i$  and the function `main` calls this function with the argument  $6 \cdot 6$ . Figure 11.14 on page 172 shows how this program can be translated into the assembler program `Sum.jas`. We discuss the implementation of this program next.

1. Line 1 specifies the name of the generated class which is to be `Sum`.
2. Line 2 specifies that the class `Sum` is a subclass of the class `java.lang.Object`.
3. Lines 4 – 6 initialize the class. The code used here is the same as in the example printing “Hello World!.”.
4. Line 8 declares the method `main`. This method takes an argument which is an array of strings. It does not return a value.
5. Line 9 specifies that there is just one local variable.
6. Line 10 specifies that the stack will contain at most 3 temporary values.

```

1   #import "stdio.h"
2
3   int sum(int n) {
4       int s;
5       s = 0;
6       while (n != 0) {
7           s = s + n;
8           n = n - 1;
9       };
10      return s;
11  }
12  int main() {
13      printf("%d\n", sum(6*6));
14      return 0;
15  }

```

Figure 11.13: A C function to compute the sum  $\sum_{i=1}^{36} i$ .

7. Line 11 pushes the object `java.lang.out` onto the stack. We need this object later in order to invoke `println`.
8. Line 12 pushes the number 6 onto the stack.
9. Line 13 duplicates the value 6. Therefore, after line 15 is executed, the stack contains three elements: The object `java.lang.out`, the number 6, and again the number 6.
10. Line 14 multiplies the two values on top of the stack and replaces them with their product, which happens to be 36.
11. Line 15 calls the method `sum` defined below. After this call has finished, the number 36 on top of the stack is replaced with the value `sum(36)`.
12. Line 16 prints the value that is on top of the stack. This is possible, because the object `java.lang.out` is directly below the value `sum(36)`.
13. Line 20 declares the method `sum`. This method takes one integer argument and returns an integer as result.
14. Line 21 specifies that the method `sum` has two local variables: The first local variable is the parameter `n` and the second local variable corresponds to the variable `s` in the C program.
15. The effect of lines 23 and 24 is to initialize this variable `s` with the value 0.
16. Line 26 pushes the local variable `n` on the stack so that line 27 is able to test whether `n` is already 0. If `n = 0`, the program branches to the label `finish` in line 37, pushes the result `s` onto the stack (line 38) and returns. If `n` is not yet 0, the execution proceeds to line 28.

```
1  .class public Sum
2  .super java/lang/Object
3
4  .method public <init>()V
5      ...
6  .end method
7
8  .method public static main([Ljava/lang/String;)V
9      .limit locals 1
10     .limit stack 3
11     getstatic     java/lang/System/out Ljava/io/PrintStream;
12     ldc           6
13     dup
14     imul
15     invokespecial Sum/sum(I)I
16     invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream/println(I)V
17     return
18 .end method
19
20 .method public static sum(I)I
21     .limit locals 2
22     .limit stack 2
23     ldc   0
24     istore 1          ; s = 0;
25 loop:
26     iload  0          ; n
27     ifeq   finish       ; if (n == 0) goto finish;
28     iload  1          ; s
29     iload  0          ; n
30     iadd
31     istore 1          ; s = s + n;
32     iload  0          ; n
33     ldc   1
34     isub
35     istore 0          ; n = n - 1;
36     goto   loop
37 finish:
38     iload  1
39     ireturn          ; return s;
40 .end method
```

Figure 11.14: An assembler program to compute the sum  $\sum_{i=1}^{36} i$ .

17. Line 28 and line 29 push the sum  $s$  and the variable  $n$  onto the stack. These values are then added in line 30 and the result is written to the local variable  $s$  in line 31. The combined effect of these instructions is therefore to perform the assignment

```
s = s + n;
```

18. The instructions in line 32 up to line 35 implement the assignment

```
n = n - 1;
```

19. In line 36 we jump back to the beginning of the loop and test whether  $n$  is zero.

20. The declaration in line 40 terminates the definition of the method `sum`.

### Exercise 27:

- (a) Implement an assembler program that computes the function `factorial`, which takes a natural number  $n$  as input and returns  $n!$ . Test your program by printing  $n!$  for  $n = 1, \dots, 10$ .
- (b) Implement the function `factorial` in a recursive manner.

## 11.4 Disassembler\*

Sometimes it is useful to transform a file consisting of Java byte code back into something that looks like assembler code. After all, a Java class file is a binary file and can therefore only be viewed via commands like `od` that produce an *octal* or *hexadecimal dump* of the given file. The command `javap` is a *disassembler*, i.e. it takes a Java byte code file and transforms it in something that looks similar to *Jasmin* assembler. For example, Figure 11.15 shows the class Java class `Sum` to compute the sum

$$\sum_{i=1}^{36} i$$

written in Java. If this program is stored in a file called “`Sum.java`”, we can compile it via the following command:

```
javac Sum.java
```

This will produce a class file with the name “`Sum.class`” containing the byte code.

Next, in order to *decompile* the “`.class`” file, we run the command

```
javap -c Sum.class
```

The output of this command is shown in Figure 11.17. We see that the syntax used by `javap` differs a bit from the syntax used by *Jasmin*. It is rather unfortunate that the company developing Java has decided not to make their assembler public. Still, we can see that the output produced by `javap` is quite similar to the input accepted by *jasmn*.

```
1  public class Sum {  
2      public static void main(String[] args) {  
3          System.out.println(sum(6 * 6));  
4      }  
5  
6      static int sum(int n) {  
7          int s = 0;  
8          for (int i = 0; i <= n; ++i) {  
9              s += i;  
10         }  
11         return s;  
12     }  
13 }
```

Figure 11.15: A Java program computing  $\sum_{i=0}^{6^2} i$ .

```
Compiled from "Sum.java"
public class Sum {
    public Sum();
        Code:
            0: aload_0
            1: invokespecial #1 // Method java/lang/Object."<init>":()V
            4: return

    public static void main(java.lang.String[]);
        Code:
            0: getstatic      #2 // Field java/lang/System.out:
                           //           Ljava/io/PrintStream;
            3: bipush         36
            5: invokestatic   #3 // Method sum:(I)I
            8: invokevirtual #4 // Method java/io/PrintStream.println:(I)V
           11: return

    static int sum(int);
        Code:
            0: iconst_0
            1: istore_1
            2: iconst_0
            3: istore_2
            4: iload_2
            5: iload_0
            6: if_icmpgt     19
            9: iload_1
           10: iload_2
           11: iadd
           12: istore_1
           13: iinc          2,  1
           16: goto          4
           19: iload_1
           20: ireturn
}
```

Figure 11.16: The output of “javap -c Sum.class”.

## Chapter 12

# Development of a Simple Compiler

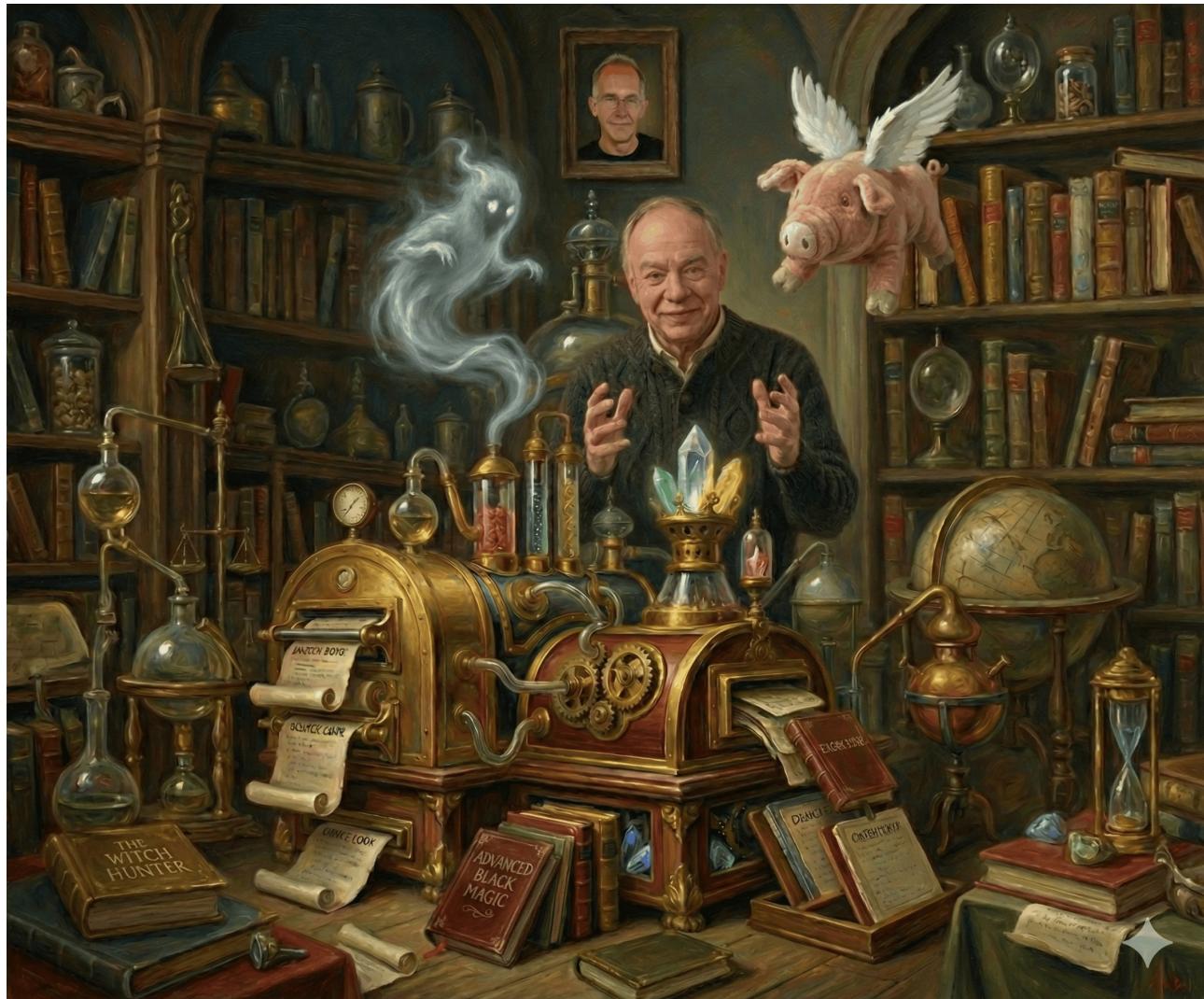


Figure 12.1: A medieval compiler.

In this chapter, we construct a compiler that translates a fragment of the C language into Java assembler. The fragment of the C language translated by the compiler is referred to as *Integer-C*, because only the data type `int` is available. Although it would be feasible to support additional data types, the extra effort would no longer be proportionate to the educational benefit of the example.

A compiler essentially consists of the following components:

1. The scanner reads the file to be translated and breaks it down into a sequence of tokens. We will develop our scanner using the PLY tool.
2. The parser reads the sequence of tokens and produces an abstract syntax tree as a result. We will use PLY for the creation of the parser.
3. The type-checker checks the abstract syntax tree for type errors. Since the language *Integer-C* contains only a single data type, this phase is not needed for our compiler.
4. The code generator then translates the parse tree into a sequence of assembler commands that conform to the syntax of *Jasmin*.
5. This can be followed by an *optimization phase*. Due to time constraints we cannot cover this topic.
6. The resulting assembler program can be translated into Java bytecode using *Jasmin*.
7. The Java bytecode is then executed by the JVM, i.e. the Java virtual machine.

In compilers whose target code is a RISC assembler program, a code similar to JVM code is usually generated first. Such a code is referred to as *intermediate code*. It then remains the task of a so-called *backend* to generate an assembler program for a given processor architecture. The most challenging task here is to find a register allocation for the variables, such that as many variables as possible can be held in registers.

## 12.1 The Programming Language Integer-C

We now introduce the language *Integer-C*, which our compiler is intended to translate. In this context, we also refer to it as the *source language* of our compiler. Figure 12.2 on page 179 shows the grammar of the source language in Extended Backus-Naur Form (EBNF). The grammar for *Integer-C* uses the following terminals:

1. ID is an abbreviation for *Identifier* and represents a sequence of digits, letters, and underscores that begins with a letter. An ID designates either a variable or the name of a function.
2. NUMBER stands for a sequence of digits interpreted as a decimal number.
3. In addition, there are a number of operators such as "+", "-", etc., as well as keywords like "if", "else", and "while".

According to the grammar provided above, a program is a list of functions. A function consists of the declaration of its signature, followed by a list of declarations (*decl*) and commands (*stmt*) enclosed in curly braces. The grammar shown in Figure 12.2 is ambiguous:

```

program  →  function+
function → “int” ID “(” paramList “)” “{” decl+ stmt+ “}”
paramList → (“int” ID (”, ” int” ID)*)?
decl   → “int” ID “;”
stmtnt → “{” stmtnt* “}”
|  ID “=” expr “;”
|  “if” “(” boolExpr “)” stmtnt
|  “if” “(” boolExpr “)” stmtnt “else” stmtnt
|  “while” “(” boolExpr “)” stmtnt
|  “return” expr “;”
|  expr “;”
boolExpr → boolExpr (“&&” | “| |”) boolExpr
|  “!” boolExpr
|  “(” boolExpr “)”
|  expr (“==” | “!=” | “<=” | “>=” | “<” | “>”) expr
expr   → expr (“+” | “-” | “*” | “/” | “%”) expr
|  “(” expr “)”
|  NUMBER
|  ID (“(”(expr (”, ” expr)*)? “)”)?

```

Figure 12.2: An EBNF grammar for Integer-C

1. The grammar has the [Dangling-Else Problem](#). We will solve this problem via operator precedences.
2. For the operators used in arithmetic and Boolean expressions, precedences must be set to resolve ambiguities in the interpretation of these expressions.

Figure 12.3 shows a simple INTEGER-C program. The function `sum(n)` calculates the sum

$$\sum_{i=1}^n i$$

and the function `main()` calls the function `sum` with the argument  $6 \cdot 6$ . The function `println` used in the program outputs its argument followed by a newline. We assume that this function is predefined.

---

```

1  int sum(int n) {
2      int s;
3      s = 0;
4      while (n != 0) {
5          s = s + n;
6          n = n - 1;
7      };
8      return s;
9  }
10 int main() {
11     int n;
12     n = 6 * 6;
13     println(sum(n));
14 }
```

---

Figure 12.3: A simple INTEGER-C program to compute the sum  $\sum_{i=1}^{6 \cdot 6} i$ .

## 12.2 Developing the Scanner and the Parser

We construct both the scanner and the parser using *Ply*. Figure 12.4 shows the scanner. The scanner recognizes the operators, keywords, identifiers, and numbers. As the scanner is mostly similar to those scanners that we have already seen before, there are only a few points worth mentioning.

1. If a token does not have to be manipulated by the scanner, then it can be defined by a simple equation of the form

`t_name = regexp`

where *name* is the name of the token and *regexp* is the regular expression defining the token. We have used this shortcut to define most of the tokens recognized by our scanner.

2. While we do not need to declare tokens for those operators that consist of just one token, we have to declare those tokens that consist of two or more characters. For example, the operator “==” is represented by the token ‘EQ’ and is defined in line 7.
3. Our programming language supports single line comments that start with the string “//” and extend to the end of the line. These comments are implemented via the token **COMMENT** that is defined in line 14–16. Note that the function `t_COMMENT` does not return a value. Therefore, these comments are simply discarded. This is also the reason that we have to use a function to define this token.
4. The most interesting aspect is the implementation of keywords like “while” or “return”. Note that we have defined separate tokens for all of the keywords but we have not defined any of these tokens. For example, we have not defined `t_return`. The reason is that, syntactically, all of the keywords are identifiers and are recognized by the regular expression

---

```

1 import ply.lex as lex
2
3 tokens = [ 'NUMBER', 'ID', 'EQ', 'NE', 'LE', 'GE', 'AND', 'OR',
4             'INT', 'IF', 'ELSE', 'WHILE', 'RETURN' ]
5
6 t_NUMBER = r'0|[1-9][0-9]'
7 t_EQ    = r'==''
8 t_NE    = r'!='
9 t_LE    = r'<='
10 t_GE   = r'>='
11 t_AND  = r'&&'
12 t_OR   = r'\|\|'
13
14 def t_COMMENT(t):
15     r'//[^\\n]*'
16     pass
17
18 Keywords = { 'int': 'INT', 'if': 'IF', 'else': 'ELSE',
19             'while': 'WHILE', 'return': 'RETURN' }
20
21 def t_ID(t):
22     r'[a-zA-Z][a-zA-Z0-9_]*'
23     t.type = Keywords.get(t.value, 'ID')
24     return t
25
26 literals = [ '+', '-', '*', '/', '%', '(', ')', '{', '}',
27               '=', '<', '>', '!', ',', ';' ]
28
29 t_ignore = ' \t\r'
30
31 def t_newline(t):
32     r'\n+'
33     t.lexer.lineno += t.value.count('\n')
34
35 def t_error(t):
36     print(f"Illegal character '{t.value[0]}' in line {t.lineno}.")
37     t.lexer.skip(1)
38
39 __file__ = 'main'
40 lexer    = lex.lex()

```

---

Figure 12.4: The scanner for Integer-C.

```
r'[a-zA-Z][a-zA-Z0-9_]*'
```

that is used for recognizing identifiers in line 22. However, the function `t_ID` that recognizes identifiers does not immediately return the token '`ID`' when it has scanned the name of an identifier. Rather, it first checks whether this name is a predefined keyword. The predefined keywords are the key of the dictionary `Keywords` that is defined in line 18 and 19. The values of the keywords in this dictionary are the token types. Therefore, the function `t_ID` sets the `token type` of the token that is returned to the value stored in the dictionary `Keywords`. In case a name is not defined in this dictionary, the token type is set to '`ID`'.

5. The scanner implements the function `t_newline` in line 31. This function is needed to update the attribute `lineno` of the scanner. This attribute stores the line number and is needed for error messages.

---

```

1 import ply.yacc as yacc
2
3 start = 'program'
4
5 precedence = (
6     ('nonassoc', 'IF'),
7     ('nonassoc', 'ELSE'),
8     ('left', 'OR'),
9     ('left', 'AND'),
10    ('right', '!'),
11    ('nonassoc', 'EQ', 'NE', 'LE', 'GE', '<', '>'),
12    ('left', '+', '-'),
13    ('left', '*', '/', '%')
14 )
15
16 def p_program_one(p):
17     "program : function"
18     p[0] = ('.', p[1])
19
20 def p_program_more(p):
21     "program : function program"
22     p[0] = ('.', p[1]) + p[2][1:]
23
24 def p_function(p):
25     "function : INT ID '(' param_list ')' '{' decl_list stmnt_list '}'"
26     p[0] = ('fct', p[2], p[4], p[7], p[8])

```

---

Figure 12.5: Grammar for Integer-C, part 1.

Now we are ready to present the specification of our parser. For reasons of space, we have split the grammar into six parts. We start with Figure 12.5 on page 182.

1. Line 3 declares the start symbol **program**.
2. Line 5–14 declare the operator precedences.
  - (a) The keywords “**if**” and “**else**” have the lowest precedence and the precedence of “**if**” is lower than the precedence of “**else**”. This is necessary to solve the **dangling else** conflict.
  - (b) The operator “**||**” that represents **logical or** has the lowest precedence of all proper operators and associates to the left.
  - (c) The operator “**&&**” that represents **logical and** binds stronger than “**||**” but not as strong as the negation operator “**!**”.
  - (d) The negation operator “**!**” is right associative because we want to interpret an expression of the form **!!a** as **!(!a)**.
  - (e) The comparison operators “**==**”, “**!=**”, “**<=**”, “**>=**”, “**<**”, and “**>**” are non-associative, since our programming languages disallows the chaining of comparison operators, i.e. an expression of the form **x < y < z** is syntactically invalid.
  - (f) The arithmetical operators “**+**” and “**-**” have a lower precedence than the arithmetical operators “**\***”, “**/**”, and “**%**”.
3. A **program** is a non-empty list of **function** definitions. Therefore, it is either a single function definition (line 16–18) or it is a function definition followed by more function definitions (line 20–22).

The purpose of the parser is to turn the given program into an abstract syntax tree. This abstract syntax tree is represented as a **nested tuple**. A program consisting of the functions  $f_1, \dots, f_n$  is represented as the nested tuple.

$$(\text{"program"}, f_1, \dots, f_n).$$

If in line 19 a **program** consisting of a **function** and another **program** is parsed, the expression **p[2]** in line 20 refers to the abstract syntax tree representing the **program** that follows the **function**. The expression **p[2][1:]** discards the keyword “**program**” that is at the start of this nested tuple. Hence, **p[2][1:]** is just a tuple of the functions following the first **function**. Therefore, the assignment to **p[0]** creates a nested tuple that starts with the keyword “**program**” followed by all the functions defined in this program.

4. A **function** definition starts with the keyword “**int**” that is followed by the name of the function, an opening parenthesis, a list of the parameters of the function, a closing parenthesis, an opening brace, a list of declarations, a list of statements, and finally a closing brace.

The initial version of the programming language C, as detailed in the book “*The C Programming Language*” [KR78], required that all variable declarations precede any statements, prohibiting the mixing of declarations and statements. While this limitation was lifted in subsequent versions of the language, our implementation still enforces this restriction.

Figure 12.6 shows the definition of parameter lists, declaration lists, and statement lists.

1. The definition of a list of parameters is quite involved, because parameter lists may be empty and, furthermore, different parameters have to be separated by “**,**”. Therefore, we have to introduce the additional syntactical variable **ne\_param\_list**, which represents a non-empty parameter list. The grammar rules for **param\_list** are as follows:

```

27     def p_param_list_empty(p):
28         "param_list :"
29         p[0] = ('.', )
30
31     def p_param_list_one(p):
32         "param_list : INT ID"
33         p[0] = ('.', p[2])
34
35     def p_param_list_more(p):
36         "param_list : INT ID ',' ne_param_list"
37         p[0] = ('.', p[2]) + p[4][1:]
38
39     def p_ne_param_list_one(p):
40         "ne_param_list : INT ID"
41         p[0] = ('.', p[2])
42
43     def p_ne_param_list_more(p):
44         "ne_param_list : INT ID ',' ne_param_list"
45         p[0] = ('.', p[2]) + p[4][1:]
46
47     def p_decl_list_empty(p):
48         "decl_list :"
49         p[0] = ('.', )
50
51     def p_decl_list_more(p):
52         "decl_list : INT ID ';' decl_list"
53         p[0] = ('.', p[2]) + p[4][1:]
54
55     def p_stmnt_list_empty(p):
56         "stmnt_list :"
57         p[0] = ('.', )
58
59     def p_stmnt_list_more(p):
60         "stmnt_list : stmnt stmnt_list"
61         p[0] = ('.', p[1]) + p[2][1:]

```

Figure 12.6: Grammar for Integer-C, part 2.

```

param_list

    param_list
        : /* epsilon */
        | 'int' ID
        | 'int' ID ',' ne_param_list
        ;
    ne_param_list
        : 'int' ID - 183/216 -
        | 'int' ID ',' ne_param_list
        ;

```

We use the “.” as a key to represent lists of any kind as nested tuples.

2. The grammar rules for a list of declarations are as follows:

```
decl_list
  decl_list
    : /* epsilon */
    | 'int' ID ';' decl_list
    ;
```

Observe that with this definition a list of declarations may be empty. The grammar rules for a list of declarations are simpler than the grammar rules for a parameter list because every variable declaration is ended with a semicolon, while parameters are separated by commas and the last parameter must not be followed by a comma.

3. The grammar rules for a list of statements are as follows:

```
stmt_list
  stmt_list
    : /* epsilon */
    | stmtn stmt_list
    ;
```

Figure 12.7 on page 186 shows how the variable **stmtn** is defined. The grammar rules for statements are as follows:

```
stmt
  stmt : '{' stmt_list '}'
    | ID '=' expr ';'
    | 'if' '(' bool_expr ')' stmt
    | 'if' '(' bool_expr ')' stmt 'else' stmt
    | 'while' '(' bool_expr ')' stmt
    | 'return' expr ';'
    | expr ';'
    ;
```

Figure 12.8 on page 187 shows how Boolean expressions are defined. The grammar rules are as follows:

```

62     def p_stmnt_block(p):
63         "stmnt : '{' stmnt_list '}'"
64         p[0] = p[2]
65
66     def p_stmnt_assign(p):
67         "stmnt : ID '=' expr ';' "
68         p[0] = ('=', p[1], p[3])
69
70     def p_stmnt_if(p):
71         "stmnt : IF '(' bool_expr ')' stmnt"
72         p[0] = ('if', p[3], p[5])
73
74     def p_stmnt_if_else(p):
75         "stmnt : IF '(' bool_expr ')' stmnt ELSE stmnt"
76         p[0] = ('if-else', p[3], p[5], p[7])
77
78     def p_stmnt_while(p):
79         "stmnt : WHILE '(' bool_expr ')' stmnt"
80         p[0] = ('while', p[3], p[5])
81
82     def p_stmnt_return(p):
83         "stmnt : RETURN expr ';' "
84         p[0] = ('return', p[2])
85
86     def p_stmnt_expr(p):
87         "stmnt : expr ';' "
88         p[0] = p[1]

```

Figure 12.7: Grammar for Integer-C, part 3.

**bool\_expr**

```

    bool_expr : bool_expr '||' bool_expr
              | bool_expr '&&' bool_expr
              | '!' bool_expr
              | '(' bool_expr ')'
              | expr '==' expr
              | expr '!= expr
              | expr '<=' expr
              | expr '>=' expr
              | expr '<' expr
              | expr '>' expr
              ;

```

```

89     def p_bool_expr_or(p):
90         "bool_expr : bool_expr OR bool_expr"
91         p[0] = ('||', p[1], p[3])
92
93     def p_bool_expr_and(p):
94         "bool_expr : bool_expr AND bool_expr"
95         p[0] = ('&&', p[1], p[3])
96
97     def p_bool_expr_neg(p):
98         "bool_expr : '!' bool_expr"
99         p[0] = ('!', p[2])
100
101    def p_bool_expr_paren(p):
102        "bool_expr : '(' bool_expr ')'"
103        p[0] = p[2]
104
105    def p_bool_expr_eq(p):
106        "bool_expr : expr EQ expr"
107        p[0] = ('==', p[1], p[3])
108
109    def p_bool_expr_ne(p):
110        "bool_expr : expr NE expr"
111        p[0] = ('!=', p[1], p[3])
112
113    def p_bool_expr_le(p):
114        "bool_expr : expr LE expr"
115        p[0] = ('<=', p[1], p[3])
116
117    def p_bool_expr_ge(p):
118        "bool_expr : expr GE expr"
119        p[0] = ('>=', p[1], p[3])
120
121    def p_bool_expr_lt(p):
122        "bool_expr : expr '<' expr"
123        p[0] = ('<', p[1], p[3])
124
125    def p_bool_expr_gt(p):
126        "bool_expr : expr '>' expr"
127        p[0] = ('>', p[1], p[3])

```

Figure 12.8: Grammar for Integer-C, part 4.

Figure 12.9 on page 188 shows how arithmetic expressions are defined. The grammar rules are as

```

128     def p_expr_plus(p):
129         "expr : expr '+' expr"
130         p[0] = ('+', p[1], p[3])
131
132     def p_expr_minus(p):
133         "expr : expr '-' expr"
134         p[0] = ('-', p[1], p[3])
135
136     def p_expr_times(p):
137         "expr : expr '*' expr"
138         p[0] = ('*', p[1], p[3])
139
140     def p_expr_divide(p):
141         "expr : expr '/' expr"
142         p[0] = ('/', p[1], p[3])
143
144     def p_expr_modulo(p):
145         "expr : expr '%' expr"
146         p[0] = ('%', p[1], p[3])
147
148     def p_expr_group(p):
149         "expr : '(' expr ')'"
150         p[0] = p[2]
151
152     def p_expr_number(p):
153         "expr : NUMBER"
154         p[0] = ('Number', p[1])
155
156     def p_expr_id(p):
157         "expr : ID"
158         p[0] = p[1]
159
160     def p_expr_fct_call(p):
161         "expr : ID '(' expr_list ')'"
162         p[0] = ('call', p[1]) + p[3][1:]

```

Figure 12.9: Grammar for Integer-C, part 5.

follows:

```
expr
expr : expr '+' expr
      | expr '-' expr
      | expr '*' expr
      | expr '/' expr
      | expr '%' expr
      | '(' expr ')'
      | NUMBER
      | ID
      | ID '(' expr_list ')'
```

Finally, Figure 12.10 on page 190 shows how `expr_list` is defined.

```
expr_list
expr_list : /* epsilon */
           | expr
           | expr ',' ne_expr_list
           ;
ne_expr_list : expr
              | expr ',' ne_expr_list
              ;
```

Furthermore, this function shows the definition of the function `p_error`, which is called if PLY detects a syntax error. PLY will detect a syntax error in the case that the state of the generated shift/reduce parser has no action for the next input token. The argument `p` to the function `p_error` is the first token for which the action of the shift/reduce parser is undefined. In this case `p.value` is the part of the input string corresponding to this token.

**Exercise 28:** Extend the parser that is available at

<https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/Ply/Compiler.ipynb>

so that it supports the ternary C-operator for conditional expressions. For example, in C, the following assignment using the ternary operator can be used to assign to the variable `max` the maximum of the values of the variables `x` and `y`:

`max = x > y ? x : y;`

Extend the parser so it can process the assignment shown above. ◇

```
163 def p_expr_list_empty(p):
164     "expr_list :"
165     p[0] = ('.',)
166
167 def p_expr_list_one(p):
168     "expr_list : expr"
169     p[0] = ('.', p[1])
170
171 def p_expr_list_more(p):
172     "expr_list : expr ',' ne_expr_list"
173     p[0] = ('.', p[1]) + p[3][1:]
174
175 def p_ne_expr_list_one(p):
176     "ne_expr_list : expr"
177     p[0] = ('.', p[1])
178
179 def p_ne_expr_list_more(p):
180     "ne_expr_list : expr ',' ne_expr_list"
181     p[0] = ('.', p[1]) + p[3][1:]
182
183 def p_error(p):
184     if p:
185         print(f'Syntax error at "{p.value}" in line {p.lineno}.')
186     else:
187         print('Syntax error at end of input.')
188
189 parser = yacc.yacc(write_tables=False, debug=True)
```

Figure 12.10: Grammar for Integer-C, part 6.

## 12.3 Code Generation

Next, we discuss the generation of code. We structure our representation by discussing the code generation for arithmetic expressions, Boolean expression, statements, and function definitions separately.

### 12.3.1 Translation of Arithmetic Expressions

Given an arithmetic expression  $e$ , the translation of  $e$  is supposed to generate some code that, when executed, places the result of evaluating the expression  $e$  onto the stack. To this end we define a function `compile_expr` that has the following signature:

$$\text{compile\_expr} : \text{Expr} \times \text{SymbolTable} \times \text{ClassName} \rightarrow \langle \text{List}[\text{AsmCmd}], \mathbb{N} \rangle.$$

A call of this function has the form

$$\text{compile\_expr(expr, st, name)}.$$

The interpretation of the arguments is as follows:

- (a) `expr` is the arithmetic expression that is to be translated into assembler code.
- (b) `st` is the `symbol table`: Concretely, this is a dictionary that maps the variable names to their position in the local variable frame. For example, if “`x`” is a variable that occupies the third slot in the local variable frame, then we have

$$\text{st}['x'] = 2,$$

because the first variable in the local variable frame has index 0. We will discuss later how the positions of the variables in the local variable frame is assigned.

- (c) `name` is the name of the class that is to be used by our compiler.

As we generate Java assembler and in Java every function has to be a part of a class, all functions that we create have to be static functions that are defined inside the Java `.class` file that is generated. The parameter `name` specifies the name of this class.

The argument `name` is only needed when function calls are translated.

The function `compile_expr` returns a pair.

- (a) The first component of this pair is a list of Java assembler commands that adhere to the syntax recognized by *Jasmin*. In general, when the expression that is translated is complex, the execution of these assembler commands might need considerable room on the stack. However, it has to be guaranteed that when the execution of these commands finishes, the stack is back to its original height plus one because the net effect of executing these commands must be to put the value of the expression on the stack.
- (b) The second component of the return value of `compile_expr` is a natural number. This natural number tells us how much the stack might grow when `expr` is evaluated. This information is needed because the Java virtual machine needs this information in advance: In Java, every function has to declare how much space it might use on the stack. This declaration is done using the pseudo assembler command

$$\text{.limit stack sz}$$

where `sz` is the maximum size of the stack. Controlling the maximum height of the stack is a security feature of Java that prevents exploits that utilize stack overflows.

In the following, we discuss the evaluation of the different arithmetic expressions one by one.

### Translation of a Variable

If the expression that is to be compiled is a variable  $v$ , we have to load this variable onto the stack using the command `iload`. This command has one parameter which is the index of the variable on the local variable frame. This index is stored in the symbol table `st`. Since we just need one entry on the stack to store the variable, we have

$$\text{compile\_expr}(v, \text{st}, \text{name}) = \langle [\text{ iload st}[v] ], 1 \rangle \quad \text{if } v \text{ is a variable.}$$

The code for translating a variable is shown in Figure 12.11 on page 192.

```

1  def compile_expr(expr, st, class_name):
2      if isinstance(expr, str):
3          return [f'iload {st[expr]}'], 1
4      ...

```

Figure 12.11: Translation of a variable.

### Translation of a Constant

We can load a constant  $c$  onto the stack using the assembler command

`ldc c.`

As we only need the room to store  $c$  on the stack, we have

$$\text{compile\_expr}(c, \text{st}, \text{name}) = \langle [\text{ ldc } c ], 1 \rangle \quad \text{if } c \text{ is a constant.}$$

The code for translating a constant is shown in Figure 12.12 on page 192.

```

5  def compile_expr(expr, st, class_name):
6      ...
7      elif expr[0] == 'Number':
8          _, n = expr
9          return [f'ldc {n}'], 1
10     ...

```

Figure 12.12: Translation of a variable.

### Translation of an Arithmetic Operator

In order to translate an expression of the form

*lhs* “+” *rhs*

into assembler code, we first have to recursively translate the expressions *lhs* and *rhs* into assembler code. Later, when this code is executed the values of the expressions *lhs* und *rhs* are placed on the stack. We add these values using the command `iadd`. If the evaluation of *lhs* needs  $s_1$  words on the stack and the evaluation of *rhs* needs  $s_2$  words on the stack, then the evaluation of *lhs* + *rhs* needs

$$\max(s_1, 1 + s_2)$$

words on the stack, because when *rhs* is evaluated, the value of *lhs* occupies already one position on the stack and hence the evaluation of *rhs* can only use the memory cells that are above the position where *lhs* is stored. Therefore, the compilation of *lhs* + *rhs* can be specified as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{compile\_expr}(\textit{lhs}, \textit{st}, \textit{name}) &= \langle L_1, s_1 \rangle \\ \wedge \quad \text{compile\_expr}(\textit{rhs}, \textit{st}, \textit{name}) &= \langle L_2, s_2 \rangle \\ \rightarrow \quad \text{compile\_expr}(\textit{lhs} + \textit{rhs}, \textit{st}, \textit{name}) &= \langle L_1 + L_2 + [\text{ iadd }], \max(s_1, 1 + s_2) \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

Figure 12.13 on page 193 shows how the translation of arithmetic operators is implemented. The translation of subtraction, multiplication, and division is similar.

```

11     def compile_expr(expr, st, class_name):
12         ...
13         elif expr[0] in ['+', '-', '*', '/', '%']:
14             op, lhs, rhs = expr
15             L1, sz1 = compile_expr(lhs, st, class_name)
16             L2, sz2 = compile_expr(rhs, st, class_name)
17             OpToCmd = { '+': 'iadd', '-': 'isub', '*': 'imul', '/': 'idiv', '%': 'imod' }
18             Cmd      = indent(OpToCmd[op])
19             return L1 + L2 + [Cmd], max(sz1, 1 + sz2)
20         ...

```

Figure 12.13: Translation of the addition of expressions.

### Translation of a Function Call

In order to translate a function call of the form  $f(a_1, \dots, a_n)$  we first have to translate the arguments  $a_1, \dots, a_n$ . Then there are two cases:

1.  $f$  is a user defined function. In this case, the byte code treats  $f$  as a static function of the class `class_name`. This static function can be called using the assembler command `invokestatic`. In order to calculate the stack size that needs to be reserved for the evaluation of  $f(a_1, \dots, a_n)$ , let us assume that we have

$$\text{compile\_expr}(a_i, \textit{st}, \textit{class\_name}) = \langle L_i, s_i \rangle,$$

i.e. evaluation of the  $i^{\text{th}}$  argument is done by the list of assembler commands  $L_i$  and needs a stack size of  $s_i$ . As we are evaluating the arguments  $a_i$  in the order from  $a_1$  to  $a_n$ , the evaluation of  $a_i$  needs a stack size of  $i - 1 + s_i$ , since the results from the evaluation of the arguments  $a_1, \dots, a_{i-1}$  are already placed on the stack. Therefore, if we define

$$s := \max(s_1, 1 + s_2, \dots, i - 1 + s_i, \dots, n - 1 + s_n),$$

then  $s$  is the total amount of stack size needed to evaluate the arguments. Furthermore, let us define the **signature fs** of the function  $f$  as the string

$$\text{fs} := \text{class\_name}/f(\underbrace{I \cdots I}_n)I.$$

Then we can define the value of **compile\_expr**( $f(a_1, \dots, a_n)$ , **st**, **class\_name**) as follows:

$$\text{compile\_expr}(f(a_1, \dots, a_n), \text{st}, \text{class\_name}) := \langle L_1 + \dots + L_n + [\text{invokestatic fs}], \max(s, 1) \rangle$$

2. If  $f$  is the function `println`, then Jasmin treats the function  $f$  as a method of the predefined Java object `java.lang.System.out`. This method can be invoked using the assembler command `invokevirtual`. As before, let us assume that we have

$$\text{compile\_expr}(a_i, \text{st}, \text{class\_name}) = \langle L_i, s_i \rangle.$$

This time, we have to start by putting the object `java.lang.System.out` onto the stack before we can evaluate any of the arguments. Therefore, in order to calculate the stack size we now define

$$s := \max(1 + s_1, 2 + s_2, \dots, i - 1 + s_i, \dots, n + s_n).$$

In this case we have to define the **signature fs** of  $f$  as the string

$$\text{fs} := \text{java/io/PrintStream/println}(\underbrace{I \cdots I}_n)V.$$

Furthermore, we define the command **gs** for putting the object `java.lang.System.out` onto the stack as

$$\text{gs} := \text{getstatic java/lang/System/out Ljava/io/PrintStream};.$$

Then we can define the value of **compile\_expr**( $f(a_1, \dots, a_n)$ , **st**, **class\_name**) as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{compile\_expr}(f(a_1, \dots, a_n), \text{st}, \text{class\_name}) := \\ \langle [\text{gs}] + L_1 + \dots + L_n + [\text{invokestatic fs}], \max(s, 1) \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

Figure 12.13 on page 193 shows how the translation of function calls is implemented.

### 12.3.2 Translation of Boolean Expressions

Boolean expressions are build from equations and inequations using the logical operators “!” (logical not), “`&&`” (logical and), and “`| |`” (logical or). To compile Boolean expressions we define a function **compile\_bool** that has the following signature:

$$\text{compile\_bool} : \text{BoolExpr} \times \text{SymbolTable} \times \text{ClassName} \rightarrow \langle \text{List}[\text{AsmCmd}], \mathbb{N} \rangle.$$

The interpretation of the arguments is similar to the interpretation of the arguments of the function **compile\_expr**. When we execute the list of assembler commands that result from the compilation of a Boolean expression, we expect that the execution of these commands either puts the number 1

```

21  def compile_expr(expr, st, class_name):
22      ...
23      elif expr[0] == 'call' and expr[1] == 'println':
24          __, __, *args = expr
25          CmdLst      = ['getstatic java/lang/System/out Ljava/io/PrintStream;']
26          stck_size   = 0
27          cnt         = 0
28          for arg in args:
29              L, sz_arg = compile_expr(arg, st, class_name)
30              stck_size = max(stck_size, cnt + 1 + sz_arg)
31              CmdLst    += L
32              cnt       += 1
33          CmdLst += [f'invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream/println({"I"}*{cnt})V']
34          return CmdLst, stck_size
35      elif expr[0] == 'call' and expr[1] != 'println':
36          __, f, *args = expr
37          CmdLst      = []
38          stck_size   = 0
39          cnt         = 0
40          for arg in args:
41              L, sz_arg = compile_expr(arg, st, class_name)
42              stck_size = max(stck_size, cnt + sz_arg)
43              CmdLst    += L
44              cnt       += 1
45          CmdLst += [f'invokestatic {class_name}/{f}({{"I"}*{cnt}})I']
46          return CmdLst, max(stck_size, 1)
47      ...

```

Figure 12.14: Translation of function calls.

(representing `True`) or the number 0 (representing `False`) onto the stack. We start our discussion of the function `compile_bool` with the translation of equations.

### Translation of Equations

In the Java virtual machine, the logical values `True` and `False` are represented by the integers 1 and 0, respectively. Therefore, the code produced from translating an equation of the form

`lhs == rhs`

should either place the number 1 or 0 onto the stack: If the value of `lhs` is equal to the value of `rhs`, the number 1 has to be put on the stack, otherwise the value 0 has to be put onto the stack. Let us assume that we have

`compile_expr(lhs, st, class_name) = ⟨L1, s1compile_expr(rhs, st, class_name) =`

$\langle L_2, s_2 \rangle$ .

Then the stack size needed for evaluating the equation  $lhs == rhs$  is given by the expression

$$\max(s_1, 1 + s_2)$$

and the function `compile_bool` can be specified as follows:

```
compile_bool(lhs == rhs, st, class_name) = <      L1
                                         +      L2
                                         + [ if_icmpne true ]
                                         + [ bipush 0 ]
                                         + [ goto next ]
                                         + [ true: ]
                                         + [ bipush 1 ]
                                         + [ next: ],           s >
```

Here, *true* and *next* have to be new labels that do not occur elsewhere in the code for the function that is compiled. Let me explain this equation in detail:

1.  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are the lists of assembler commands that evaluate *lhs* and *rhs*, respectively.
2. Executing  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  leaves two values on the stack. These values are then compared using the assembler command `if_icmpne`. If these values are the same, execution proceeds at the label *true*.
3. Otherwise execution commences with the next instruction and hence the value 0 is pushed onto the stack.
4. Next, the control flow jumps to the label *next*, which is at the end of the generated list of assembler commands. Hence, in this case the execution of equation  $lhs == rhs$  is finished.
5. If the values of *lhs* and *rhs* are the same, the number 1 is pushed onto the stack.

The translation of a negated equation of the form

$lhs != rhs$

is similar to the translation of an equation: We only have to replace the command `if_icmpne` with the command `if_icmpne`. Similarly, if the inequation has the form

$lhs <= rhs$

we have to replace the command `if_icmpne` with the command `if_icmpge`. If the inequation has the form

$lhs >= rhs$

we have to replace the command `if_icmpne` with the command `if_icmpge`. If the inequation has the form

$lhs < rhs$

we have to replace the command `if_icmpne` with the command `if_icmplt`. If the inequation has the form

$lhs > rhs$

we have to replace the command `if_icmpne` with the command `if_icmpgt`. Figure 12.15 on page 197 shows how the translation of equations and inequations is implemented.

```

1  def compile_bool(expr, st, class_name):
2      if expr[0] in ['==', '!=', '<=', '>=', '<', '>']:
3          OpToCmd = { '==' : 'if_icmpne',
4                      '!=' : 'if_icmpne',
5                      '<=' : 'if_icmpge',
6                      '>=' : 'if_icmpge',
7                      '<' : 'if_icmplt',
8                      '>' : 'if_icmpgt'
9          }
10     op, lhs, rhs = expr
11     L1, sz1      = compile_expr(lhs, st, class_name)
12     L2, sz2      = compile_expr(rhs, st, class_name)
13     true_label   = new_label()
14     next_label   = new_label()
15     CmdLst       = L1 + L2
16     cmd           = OpToCmd[op]
17     CmdLst       += [indent(cmd + ' ' + true_label)]
18     CmdLst       += [indent('bipush 0')]
19     CmdLst       += [indent('goto ' + next_label)]
20     CmdLst       += [' ' * 4 + true_label + ':']
21     CmdLst       += [indent('bipush 1')]
22     CmdLst       += [' ' * 4 + next_label + ':']
23     return CmdLst, max(sz1, 1 + sz2)
24     . . .

```

Figure 12.15: Translation of equations.

### Translation of Binary Boolean Operators

In order to translate an expression of the form

*lhs && rhs*

into assembler code, we first have to recursively translate the expressions *lhs* and *rhs* into assembler code. Later, when this code is executed the values of the expressions *lhs* und *rhs* are placed on the stack. We combine these values using the command *iand*. If the evaluation of *lhs* needs  $s_1$  words on the stack and the evaluation of *rhs* needs  $s_2$  words on the stack, then the evaluation of *lhs + rhs* needs

$$\max(s_1, 1 + s_2)$$

words on the stack, because when *rhs* is evaluated, the value of *lhs* occupies already one position on the stack and hence the evaluation of *rhs* can only use the memory cells that are above the position where *lhs* is stored. Therefore, the compilation of *lhs && rhs* can be specified as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \text{compile\_bool}(\text{lhs}, \text{st}, \text{name}) = \langle L_1, s_1 \rangle \\
 \wedge \quad & \text{compile\_bool}(\text{rhs}, \text{st}, \text{name}) = \langle L_2, s_2 \rangle \\
 \rightarrow \quad & \text{compile\_bool}(\text{lhs} + \text{rhs}, \text{st}, \text{name}) = \langle L_1 + L_2 + [\text{iand}], \max(s_1, 1 + s_2) \rangle.
 \end{aligned}$$

The translation of an expression of the form

*lhs* || *rhs*

is similar: Instead of using the command `iand` we have to use the command `ior` instead. Figure 12.16 on page 198 shows how the translation of binary logical operators is implemented.

```

25     def compile_expr(expr, st, class_name):
26         ...
27         elif expr[0] in ['&&', '|||']:
28             op, lhs, rhs = expr
29             OpToCmd      = { '&&': iand, '|||': 'ior' }
30             L1, sz1       = compile_bool(lhs, st, class_name)
31             L2, sz2       = compile_bool(rhs, st, class_name)
32             cmd          = OpToCmd[op]
33             CmdLst       = L1 + L2 + [indent(cmd)]
34             return CmdLst, max(sz1, 1 + sz2)
35         ...

```

Figure 12.16: Translation of binary logical operators.

It should be noted that our translation of the binary logical operators is different from what happens in the language C. In C, the evaluation of logical operators is *lazy*: if an expression of the form

*lhs* && *rhs*

is evaluated, the evaluation is stopped as soon the evaluation of *lhs* returns 0 because then there is no point to evaluate *rhs*, since if the value of *lhs* is 0, the result of the expression *lhs* && *rhs* is 0, independent from the value of the expression *rhs*. Similarly, if an expression of the form

*lhs* || *rhs*

is evaluated and the evaluation of *lhs* is 1, then the result of the evaluation of the expression *lhs* || *rhs* is 1, regardless of the value of *rhs*.

### Translation of Negations

The translation of an expression of the form `!expr` is not as straightforward as the translation of conjunctions and disjunctions. The reason is that Jasmin has no assembler command of the form `inot` that negates a logical value. But there is another way: Since we represent the truth values as 0 and 1, we can specify negation arithmetically as follows:

$$!x = 1 - x.$$

Therefore, if we have

$$\text{compile\_bool(arg, st, class\_name)} = \langle L, s \rangle$$

we can define:

$$\text{compile\_bool}(!\text{arg}, \text{st}, \text{class\_name}) = \langle [\text{bipush } 1] + L + [\text{isub}], 1 + s \rangle.$$

Figure 12.17 on page 199 shows how the translation of the negation operator is implemented.

```

36     def compile_expr(expr, st, class_name):
37         ...
38     elif expr[0] == '!':
39         _, arg = expr
40         L, sz = compile_expr(arg, st, class_name)
41         CmdLst = ['bipush 1'] + L + ['isub']
42         return CmdLst, max(sz1, sz + 1)
43         ...

```

Figure 12.17: Translation of the negation operator.

### 12.3.3 Translation of Statements

Next, we show how statements are compiled. First of all, we agree that the execution of a statement must not change the size of the stack: The size of stack before the execution of a statement must be the same as the size of the stack after after the statement has been executed. Of course, during the execution of the statement the stack may well grow and shrink. But once the execution of the statement has finished, the stack has to be cleaned from all intermediate values that have been put on the stack during the execution of the statement.

To compile statements we define a function `compile_stmnt` that has the following signature:

$$\text{compile\_stmtnt} : \text{Stmtnt} \times \text{SymbolTable} \times \text{ClassName} \rightarrow \langle \text{List}[\text{AsmCmd}], \mathbb{N} \rangle.$$

The interpretation of the arguments is similar to the interpretation of the arguments of the function `compile_expr`. The only difference is that the first argument now is an abstract syntax tree that represents a statement.

#### Translation of Assignments

To begin with, we show how an assignment of the form

$$x = \text{expr}$$

is translated. The idea is to evaluate `expr`. As a consequence of this evaluation the value of `expr` remains on the stack, from where it can be stored in the variable `x` using the assembler command `istore`. Therefore, if we have

$$\text{compile\_expr}(\text{expr}, \text{st}, \text{class\_name}) = \langle L, s \rangle$$

we can define:

$$\text{compile\_stmtnt}(x = \text{expr}, \text{st}, \text{class\_name}) = \langle L + [\text{istore } \text{st}[x]], s \rangle.$$

Figure 12.18 on page 200 shows how the translation of an assignment is implemented.

```

1  def compile_stmnt(stmtnt, st, class_name):
2      if stmtnt[0] == '=':
3          _, var, expr = stmtnt
4          CmdLst, sz = compile_expr(expr, st, class_name)
5          CmdLst += [f'istore {st[var]}']
6          return CmdLst, sz
7      ...

```

Figure 12.18: Translation of an assignment statement.

### The Translation of Branching Commands

Next, we show how to translate a branching command of the form

`if (bool_expr) stmtnt.`

Obviously, we first have to translate the Boolean expression `bool_expr`. If we have

`compile_expr(bool_expr, st, class_name) = ⟨L1, s1`

and, furthermore,

`compile_stmnt(stmtnt, st, class_name) = ⟨L2, s2,`

then we can define:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{compile_stmnt}(\text{if } (\text{expr}) \text{ stmtnt}, \text{st}, \text{class\_name}) &= \langle & L_1 \\ &+ [\text{ifeq else}] \\ &+ L_2 \\ &+ [\text{else:}], \max(s_1, s_2) \rangle \end{aligned}$$

This works because executing the list of assembler commands  $L_1$  leaves either a 0 or a 1 on the stack. If `expr` is false, the top of the stack stores the number 0. In this case, the branching command `ifeq` branches to the label `else` and the assembler commands in the list  $L_2$  are not executed. If `expr` is true, the top of the stack stores the number 1. Therefore, the branching command `ifeq` does not branch and the assembler commands in the list  $L_2$  are executed, i.e. `stmtnt` is executed.

The translation of a branching command of the form

`if (bool_expr) stmtnt1 else stmtnt2`

is similar. Let us assume that we have the following:

1. `compile_expr(bool_expr, st, class_name) = ⟨L1, s1`
2. `compile_stmnt(stmtnt1, st, class_name) = ⟨L2, s2, and`
3. `compile_stmnt(stmtnt2, st, class_name) = ⟨L3, s3.`

Then we define:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{compile\_stmt}(\text{if } (\text{bool\_expr}) \text{ stmt}_1 \text{ else } \text{stmt}_2, \text{st}, \text{class\_name}) &= \langle & L_1 \\ &+ [\text{ifeq else}] \\ &+ L_2 \\ &+ [\text{goto next}] \\ &+ [\text{else:}] \\ &+ L_3 \\ &+ [\text{next:}], & \max(s_1, s_2, s_3) \rangle \end{aligned}$$

Figure 12.19 on page 201 shows how the translation of branching statements is implemented.

---

```

1  def compile_stmt(stmtnt, st, class_name):
2      ...
3      elif stmtnt[0] == 'if':
4          _, expr, sub_stmtnt = stmtnt
5          L1, sz1    = compile_bool(expr, st, class_name)
6          L2, sz2    = compile_stmt(sub_stmtnt, st, class_name)
7          else_label = new_label()
8          CmdLst = L1 + [f'ifeq {else_label}'] + L2 + [else_label + ':']
9          return CmdLst, max(sz1, sz2)
10     elif stmtnt[0] == 'if-else':
11         _, expr, then_stmtnt, else_stmtnt = stmtnt
12         L1, sz1    = compile_bool(expr, st, class_name)
13         L2, sz2    = compile_stmt(then_stmtnt, st, class_name)
14         L3, sz3    = compile_stmt(else_stmtnt, st, class_name)
15         else_label = new_label()
16         next_label = new_label()
17         if_stmtnt = f'ifeq {else_label}'
18         else_stmtnt = else_label + ':'
19         next_stmtnt = next_label + ':'
20         goto_stmtnt = f'goto {next_label}'
21         CmdLst = L1 + [if_stmtnt] + L2 + [goto_stmtnt, else_stmtnt] + L3 + [next_label]
22         return CmdLst, max(sz1, sz2, sz3)
23     ...

```

---

Figure 12.19: Translation of branching statements.

### Translation of a Loop

If we want to translate a `while` loop of the form

`while (cond) stmtnt`

we recursively compute

$\text{compile\_expr}(\text{cond}, \text{st}, \text{class\_name}) = \langle L_1, s_1 \rangle$

and

$$\text{compile\_stmt}(\text{stmt}, \text{st}, \text{class\_name}) = \langle L_2, s_2 \rangle,$$

Then we can define

$$\begin{aligned} \text{compile\_stmt}(\text{while } (\text{cond}) \text{ stmt}, \text{st}, \text{class\_name}) &= \langle & [loop :] \\ &+ L_1 \\ &+ [\text{ifeq } \text{next}] \\ &+ L_2 \\ &+ [\text{goto } \text{loop}] \\ &+ [\text{next:}], & \max(s_1, s_2) \rangle \end{aligned}$$

Figure 12.20 on page 202 shows how the translation of a loop is implemented.

```

1  def compile_stmt(stmt, st, class_name):
2      ...
3      elif stmt[0] == 'while':
4          _, expr, body_stmt = stmt
5          L1, sz1    = compile_bool(expr, st, class_name)
6          L2, sz2    = compile_stmt(body_stmt, st, class_name)
7          loop_label = new_label()
8          next_label = new_label()
9          if_stmtnt  = f'ifeq {next_label}'
10         loop_stmtnt = loop_label + ':'
11         next_stmtnt = next_label + ':'
12         goto_stmtnt = f'goto {loop_label}'
13         CmdLst = [loop_stmtnt] + L1 + [if_stmtnt] + L2 + [goto_stmtnt, next_stmtnt]
14         return CmdLst, max(sz1, sz2)
15     ...

```

Figure 12.20: Translation of a loop.

### Translation of a Return Statement

In order to translate a return statement of the form

```
return expr;
```

we first have to translate the expression *expr*. Assume that

$$\text{compile\_expr}(\text{expr}, \text{st}, \text{class\_name}) = \langle L, s \rangle.$$

Then we can define

$$\text{compile\_stmt}(\text{return } \text{expr};, \text{st}, \text{class\_name}) = \langle L + [\text{return}], s \rangle.$$

Figure 12.21 on page 203 shows how a return statement is translated.

```

1  def compile_stmnt(stmnt, st, class_name):
2      ...
3      elif stmnt[0] == 'return':
4          _, expr = stmnt
5          CmdLst, sz = compile_expr(expr, st, class_name)
6          CmdLst += ['ireturn']
7          return CmdLst, sz
8      ...

```

Figure 12.21: Translation of a return statement.

### Translating a Block Statement

The translation of block statement of the form

$$\{stmt_1; \dots stmt_n;\}$$

proceeds by translating the statements  $stmt_i$  separately. Assume that

$$\text{compile\_stmt}(stmt_i, st, \text{class\_name}) = \langle L_i, s_i \rangle \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, n.$$

Then we define

$$\text{compile\_stmt}(\{stmt_1; \dots stmt_n;\}, st, \text{class\_name}) := \langle L_1 + \dots + L_n, \max(s_1, \dots, s_n) \rangle.$$

Figure 12.22 on page 203 shows how the translation of a block statement is implemented.

```

1  def compile_stmnt(stmnt, st, class_name):
2      ...
3      elif stmnt[0] == '.':
4          *stmt_lst = stmnt
5          CmdLst = []
6          size = 0
7          for s in stmt_lst:
8              L, sz = compile_stmnt(s, st, class_name)
9              CmdLst += L
10             size = max(size, sz)
11         return CmdLst, size

```

Figure 12.22: Translation of an expression statement.

### Translation of Expression Statements

When we translate an expression statement of the form

```
expr ;
```

we assume that the evaluation of the expression does not leave a value on the stack. At present, the only expression whose evaluation does not create a value is an invocation of the function `println`. Then in order to evaluate the expression statement, we just have to evaluate the expression. Therefore, we have

```
compile_stmt(expr; st, class_name) = compile_expr(expr, st, class_name).
```

Figure 12.23 on page 204 shows how the translation of an expression statement is implemented.

---

```
1  def compile_stmt(stmtnt, st, class_name):
2      ...
3      else: # it must be an expression statement
4          CmdLst, sz = compile_expr(stmtnt, st, class_name)
5          return CmdLst, sz
```

---

Figure 12.23: Translation of an expression statement.

#### 12.3.4 Translation of a Function Definition

Figure 12.24 on page 205 shows how a function definition is translated. In order to understand how this works we have to understand what type of code the function `compile` has to generate. Depending on whether the function that is translated is the function `main` or not there are two cases.

1. If the function that is to be compiled has the name “`main`”, the code that has to be generated has the following form:

---

```
1      .method public static main([Ljava/lang/String;)V
2          .limit locals l
3          .limit stack s
4          s1
5          :
6          sn
7          return
8      .end method
```

---

Here  $l$  is the number of all variables used by the function `main`, while  $s$  is the maximum height of the stack. Finally,  $s_1, \dots, s_n$  are the assembler commands that result from translating the block inside the function.

```

1  def compile_fct(fct_def, class_name):
2      global label_counter
3      label_counter = 0
4      _, name, parameters, variables, stmnts = fct_def
5      _, *parameters = parameters
6      _, *variables = variables
7      _, *stmnts = stmnts
8      m = len(parameters)
9      n = len(variables)
10     st = {}
11     cnt = 0
12     for var in parameters:
13         st[var] = cnt
14         cnt += 1
15     for var in variables:
16         st[var] = cnt
17         cnt += 1
18     CmdLst = []
19     size = 0
20     for stmnt in stmnts:
21         L, sz = compile_stmnt(stmnt, st, class_name)
22         CmdLst += L
23         size = max(size, sz)
24     limit_locals = f'.limit locals {m+n}'
25     limit_stack = f'.limit stack {size}'
26     if name != 'main':
27         method = f'.method public static {name}({{"I"}*m})I'
28         CmdLst = [method, limit_locals, limit_stack] + CmdLst + ['.end method']
29         return CmdLst, sz
30     else:
31         method = '.method public static main([Ljava/lang/String;)V'
32         CmdLst = [method, limit_locals, limit_stack] + CmdLst + \
33                   ['return', '.end method']
34     return CmdLst, sz

```

Figure 12.24: Translation of a function definition.

- Otherwise, the following code is to be generated:

---

```

1  .method public static f(I···I)I
2  .limit locals l
3  .limit stack s
4  s1

```

---

```

5           :
6           sn
7 .end method

```

---

Here  $f$  is the name of the function. The signature of  $f$  is a string of the form

$$f(\underbrace{I \cdots I}_m)I$$

where  $m$  is the number of the parameters. Furthermore,  $l$  is the number of all local variables and  $s$  is the maximum height of the stack. Finally,  $s_1, \dots, s_n$  are the assembler commands that result from translating the block inside the function.

We proceed to discuss the implementation shown in Figure 12.24 line by line.

1. We initialize the global variable `Label_counter` to 0. Every time a new label is generated, this counter will be incremented by the function `new_label` that creates labels of the form `l1`, `l2`, etc.
2. The nested tuple that is produced by the parser from a function definition has the form `('fct', name, parameters, variables, stmts)`.
  - (a) `name` is the name of the function.
  - (b) `parameters` is the abstract syntax tree representing the list of parameters.
  - (c) `variables` is the abstract syntax tree representing the list of all local variables declared in the function.
  - (d) `stmts` is the abstract syntax tree representing the list of all statements in the body of the function.
3. Initially, the parameters, variables, and statements are stored as nested tuples. In line 5-7 these nested tuples are transformed into proper lists.
4.  $m$  is the number of parameters.
5.  $n$  is the number of local variables.
6. The `for` loops in line 12-17 initialize the symbol table `st`. Given a parameter or local variable  $x$ , the expression `st[x]` returns the position in the local variable frame where the parameter or variable is stored.
7. The `for` loop in line 20-23 translates the statements in the body of the function one by one. Furthermore, it computes the size of the stack that is needed.
8. Line 24 declares the size of the local variable frame. The pseudo-command `.limit locals` reserves memory for the parameters and the local variables.
9. Line 25 declares the size of the stack needed by the function.
10. Depending on whether the function that is compiled is the function `main` or not, the correct code is returned.

### 12.3.5 Compiling a Program

We conclude this chapter by presenting the function `compile_program` that is shown in Figure 12.25 on page 207. This function takes the name of a file as its argument. This file is expected to contain a program written in the subset of the programming language C that has been presented in this chapter. If the name of this file is, for example, `Test.c`, then the function `compile_program` generates a file with the name `Test.jas`, that contains an assembler program that adheres to the rules of *Jasmin*. We proceed to discuss the function `compile_program` line by line.

```

1  import os
2
3  def compile_program(file_name):
4      directory = os.path.dirname(file_name)
5      base      = os.path.basename(file_name)
6      base      = base[:-2]
7      with open(file_name, 'r') as handle:
8          program = handle.read()
9      ast = yacc.parse(program)
10     _, *fct_lst = ast
11     CmdLst      = []
12     for fct in fct_lst:
13         L, _ = compile_fct(fct, base)
14         CmdLst += L + ['\n']
15     with open(directory + '/' + base + '.jas', 'w') as handle:
16         handle.write('.class public ' + base + '\n');
17         handle.write('.super java/lang/Object\n\n');
18         handle.write('.method public <init>()V\n');
19         handle.write('    aload 0\n');
20         handle.write('    invokespecial java/lang/Object/<init>()V\n');
21         handle.write('    return\n');
22         handle.write('.end method\n\n');
23     for cmd in CmdLst:
24         handle.write(cmd + '\n')

```

Figure 12.25: Translation of a program.

1. In line 1 we import the module `os`. This module contains the submodule `path` which contains the functions `dirname` and `basename`.

- (a) The function `dirname` takes a string specifying a *file path*, e.g. something like

`'~/Dropbox/Formal-Languages/Ply/Examples/Test.c'`

and returns the name of the directory. In the example given above it would return the string

`'~/Dropbox/Formal-Languages/Ply/Examples'.`

- (b) The function `basename` takes a *file path* and returns the name of the filename of the directory. In the example given previously it would return the string '`Test.c`'.

The module `os` is aware of the differences in naming directories that exist in different operating systems.

2. After computing the `directory` of the file and its `base` in line 4 and 5, we remove the file extension '`.c`' in line 6.
3. Line 7 and 8 read the file and store its content into the string `program`.
4. In line 9 our parser converts the program into an abstract syntax tree that is represented as a nested tuple.
5. `fct_lst` is a list of all function definitions occurring in the given program.
6. `CmdLst` is a list of all assembler commands that will be generated.
7. The `for` loop in line 12–14 translates all function definitions into assembler code and concatenates the assembler statements into the list `CmdLst`.
8. In line 15 the output file is opened for writing.
9. Line 16–22 write the initialization code to the output file.
10. The `for` loop in line 23–24 writes the generated assembler commands to the output file.

Figure 12.26 on page 209 shows an integer C program for computing the sum  $\sum_{i=1}^{6^2} i$ . When we translate this program using the compiler developed in this chapter, we get the program that is shown in Figure 12.27 on page 211.

```
1  int sum(int n) {
2      int s;
3      s = 0;
4      while (n != 0) {
5          s = s + n;
6          n = n - 1;
7      }
8      return s;
9  }
10
11 int main() {
12     int n;
13     n = 6 * 6;
14     println(sum(n));
15 }
```

Figure 12.26: A C program for computing the sum  $\sum_{i=1}^{6^2} i$ .

**Exercise 29:** Extend the compiler that is presented in this chapter and is available at

<https://github.com/karlstroetmann/Formal-Languages/blob/master/Ply/Compiler/>

so that a new kind of **for**-loops is supported. Figure 12.28 on page 212 shows an example of the use of this kind of **for** loop. ◇

```
1  .class public MySum
2  .super java/lang/Object
3
4  .method public <init>()V
5      aload 0
6      invokespecial java/lang/Object/<init>()V
7      return
8  .end method
9
10 .method public static sum(I)I
11 .limit locals 2
12 .limit stack 2
13     ldc 0
14     istore 1
15     l3: iload 0
16     ldc 0
17     if_icmpne l1
18     bipush 0
19     goto l2
20     l1: bipush 1
21     l2: ifeq l4
22     iload 1
23     iload 0
24     iadd
25     istore 1
26     iload 0
27     ldc 1
28     isub
29     istore 0
30     goto l3
31     l4: iload 1
32     ireturn
33 .end method
34
35 .method public static main([Ljava/lang/String;)V
36 .limit locals 1
37 .limit stack 2
38     ldc 6
39     ldc 6
40     imul
41     istore 0
42     getstatic java/lang/System/out Ljava/io/PrintStream;
43     iload 0
44     invokestatic MySum/sum(I)
45     invokevirtual java/io/PrintStream/println(I)V
46     return
47 .end method
```

---

```
1 int sum(int n) {
2     int s;
3     int i;
4     s = 0;
5     for (i = 1 .. n) {
6         s = s + i;
7     }
8     return s;
9 }
```

---

Figure 12.28: A function for computing the sum  $\sum_{i=1}^n i$ .

# Bibliography

- [ASUL06] Alfred V. Aho, Ravi Sethi, Jeffrey D. Ullman, and Monica S. Lam. *Compilers — Principles, Techniques, and Tools*. Addison-Wesley, 2nd edition, 2006.
- [Bac59] John W. Backus. The syntax and semantics of the proposed international algebraic language of the zurich ACM-GAMM conference. In *IFIP Congress*, pages 125–131, 1959.
- [CS70] John Cocke and Jacob T. Schwartz. Programming languages and their compilers: Preliminary notes. Technical report, Courant Institute of Mathematical Sciences, New York University, 1970.
- [DeR71] Franklin L. DeRemer. Simple LR(k) grammars. *Communications of the ACM*, 14(7):453–460, 1971.
- [Ear70] Jay C. Earley. An efficient context-free parsing algorithm. *Communications of the ACM*, 13(2):94–102, 1970.
- [HMU06] John E. Hopcroft, Rajeev Motwani, and Jeffrey D. Ullman. *Introduction to Automata Theory, Languages, and Computation*. Addison-Wesley, 3rd edition, 2006.
- [Kas65] Tadao Kasami. An efficient recognition and syntax-analysis algorithm for context-free languages. Technical report, Air Force Cambridge Research Lab, Bedford, MA, 1965.
- [Kle56] Stephen C. Kleene. Representation of events in nerve nets and finite automata. In C. E. Shannon and J. McCarthy, editors, *Automata studies*, pages 3–40. Princeton University Press, 1956.
- [Knu65] Donald E. Knuth. On the translation of languages from left to right. *Information and Control*, 8(6):607–639, December 1965.
- [KR78] Brian W. Kernighan and Dennis M. Ritchie. *The C Programming Language*. Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1978.
- [MD97] Jon Meyer and Troy Downing. *Java Virtual Machine*. O'Reilly, 1997.
- [NBB<sup>+</sup>60] P. Naur, J. W. Backus, F. L. Bauer, J. Green, C. Katz, J. MacCarthy, A. J. Perlis, H. Rutishauser, K. Samelson, B. Vauquois, J. H. Wegstein, A. van Wijngaarden, and M. Woodger. Report on the algorithmic language Algol 60. *Numerische Mathematik*, 2:106–136, 1960.
- [RS59] Michael Rabin and Dana Scott. Finite automata and their decision problems. *IBM Journal of Research and Development*, 3(2):114–125, 1959.

- [Sip12] Michael Sipser. *Introduction to the Theory of Computation*. Cengage Learning, third edition, 2012.
- [You67] Daniel H. Younger. Recognition and parsing of context-free languages in time  $n^3$ . *Information and Control*, 10(2):189–208, 1967.

# Index

- $L(F)$ , 33, 38  
 $\Sigma$ , 32  
 $\doteq$ , 16  
 $\emptyset$ , 14  
 $\lambda$ -generating, 126  
 $\rightsquigarrow$ , 38  
 $\det(F)$ , 41  
Ply, 19  
 $\varepsilon$ , 14  
 $\varepsilon$ -closure, 39  
 $\varepsilon$ -transition, 37  
 $\Sigma^*$ , 5  
 $\lambda$ , 5  
 $\text{closure}(\mathcal{M})$ , 124  
ASCII-Alphabet, 5  
Cyk-Algorithmus, 105  
DFA, 32  
EBNF-Grammar, 80  
NFA, 37  
UNICODE-Alphabet, 5  
Integer-C, 177  
Ply, 21  
accepted language, 33  
accepting state, 31  
accepting states, set of, 32  
alphabet, 5  
ambiguous grammar, 79  
augmented grammar, 125  
closure of a set of marked rules, 124  
Cocke-Younger-Kasami-Algorithmus, 104  
complement of a language, 58, 60  
complete, finite state machine, 33  
concatenation, 7  
configuration (of an NFA), 38  
context-free grammar, 73  
context-free language, 8  
dead state, 33  
death of a DFA, 31  
derivation-step, 75  
deterministic finite automaton, 31  
e.m.R., 137  
Earley object, 105  
empty string,  $\lambda$ , 5  
equivalence of regular expressions, 16  
extended marked rule, 137  
formal language, 5, 7  
functional token definitions, 21  
grammar rule, 73  
immediate token definition, 21  
input alphabet, 32  
Kleene closure, 13  
left-recursive, 79  
leftmost derivation, 114  
length of a string, 7  
marked rule, 123  
NFA, 37  
non-terminal, 72  
non-terminals, 73  
palindrome, 76  
parse-tree, 76  
parser configuration, 115  
ply, 21  
power of a language, 12  
power of a string, 13  
prime number, 8  
product of languages, 12  
Pumping Lemma for regular languages, 63  
pumping lemma for regular languages, 63  
reachable, 52

reduce-reduce conflict, 131, 139

regular expression, 12, 14

regular language, 8, 57

reversal of a string, 61

rightmost derivation, 114

scanner, 19

scanner states, 25

separable, 52

separates, 53

set difference, 60

shift-reduce conflict, 131, 139

shift-reduce parser, 114

SLR grammar, 131

start state, 31, 32

start symbol, 74

string, 5

symbol, 5

symbol table, 192

syntactic variable, 72

syntactic category, 72

syntactic variables, 73

terminal, 72

terminals, 73

token, 20

tokens, 73

transition function, 32

universal language, 8